

CARBONITE

Carbonite eXtreme User Manual

v15.6

Thank You For Choosing Ross

You've made a great choice. We expect you will be very happy with your purchase of Ross Technology.

Our mission is to:

1. Provide a Superior Customer Experience
 - offer the best product quality and support
2. Make Cool Practical Technology
 - develop great products that customers love

Ross has become well known for the Ross Video Code of Ethics. It guides our interactions and empowers our employees. I hope you enjoy reading it below.

If anything at all with your Ross experience does not live up to your expectations be sure to reach out to us at solutions@rossvideo.com.



David Ross

CEO, Ross Video

dross@rossvideo.com

Ross Video Code of Ethics

Any company is the sum total of the people that make things happen. At Ross, our employees are a special group. Our employees truly care about doing a great job and delivering a high quality customer experience every day. This code of ethics hangs on the wall of all Ross Video locations to guide our behavior:

1. We will always act in our customers' best interest.
2. We will do our best to understand our customers' requirements.
3. We will not ship crap.
4. We will be great to work with.
5. We will do something extra for our customers, as an apology, when something big goes wrong and it's our fault.
6. We will keep our promises.
7. We will treat the competition with respect.
8. We will cooperate with and help other friendly companies.
9. We will go above and beyond in times of crisis. *If there's no one to authorize the required action in times of company or customer crisis - do what you know in your heart is right. (You may rent helicopters if necessary.)*

Document Information

- Ross Part Number: **4803DR-110-15.6**
- Release Date: November, 2022. Printed in Canada
- Equipment: This document applies to all Carbonite eXtreme frame and Carbonite control panels.

Copyright

©2022 Ross Video Limited, Ross®, MiniME™, and any related marks are trademarks or registered trademarks of Ross Video Limited. All other trademarks are the property of their respective companies. PATENTS ISSUED and PENDING. All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of Ross Video. While every precaution has been taken in the preparation of this document, Ross Video assumes no responsibility for errors or omissions. Neither is any liability assumed for damages resulting from the use of the information contained herein.

Microsoft®, Windows®, and Windows XP® are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Macintosh®, and OS X® are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Google Chrome™, Google®, and the Google logo are registered trademarks of Google Inc.

NDI® is a registered trademark of Vizrt NDI AB.

Oracle® and Java™ are registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

Ubuntu and Canonical are registered trademarks of Canonical Ltd.

Patents

Patent numbers US 7,034,886; US 7,508,455; US 7,602,446; US 7,802,802 B2; US 7,834,886; US 7,914,332; US 8,307,284; US 8,407,374 B2; US 8,499,019 B2; US 8,519,949 B2; US 8,743,292 B2; US D752,530 S; GB 2,419,119 B; GB 2,447,380 B; and other patents pending.

Ross Video Switchers Privacy Notice

Scope of this Notice

We at Ross Video Ltd. (“ We ” , “ Us ” , or “ Our ”) know that your privacy is important. This Notice is designed to give you notice of the categories of data that are collected, and the processing activities performed on that data when you use Our products and services (“ Services ”).

Your use of Our Services is covered by Our Privacy Policy which can be reviewed by navigating to www.rossvideo.com/privacy-policy. This Notice is intended to supplement the Privacy Policy and addresses pertinent data processing activities as you make use of Ross Video Switchers.

Use and Purpose

From time to time during the useful life of your Ross Video Services, you may experience technical issues with these products, depending on how you use these products and the environments in which they are used. To assist you to resolve these issues via our Technical Support Services ([Technical Support](#) on page vii), Ross Video may require certain data from your systems, such as:

- Kernel logs: baseOS (Operating System) logs like access logs, authorization logs, error logs, etc.
- System boot information: boot up, version information, hardware, start-up information, module discovery information.
- Device connection logs these can be specific to your device.
- Generic Information: Video Reference, Button presses (panel), Crosspoint state, temperatures, etc.

How to securely transfer the data to Ross Video's Technical Support Team

The log files can either be shared with the Technical Support Team via email or uploaded to a Ross Video customer portal. The information contained in these files, such as those listed above, may contain sensitive data.

Ross Video does not make use of this information other than for resolving technical issues. For further information pertaining to Ross Video's Customer data retention practices,

please refer to Our Privacy Policy at www.rossvideo.com/privacy-policy.

Data Integrity and Security

We recommend that to maintain the data integrity of the information you share with US, you password protect the file when sharing with Ross Video or encrypt the data to ensure the confidentiality of your data remains intact. For more information on how to do this, please speak with your Ross Video representative.

Ross Video has implemented appropriate security controls to protect the confidentiality, integrity, and privacy of customers data.

Privacy Contact

For any additional questions, please reach out to privacy@rossvideo.com and refer to Our [Privacy Policy](#) for more details.

Important Regulatory and Safety Notices to Service Personnel

Before using this product and any associated equipment, refer to the “**Important Safety Instructions**” listed in the front of this manual to avoid personnel injury and to prevent product damage.

Product may require specific equipment, and/or installation procedures to be carried out to satisfy certain regulatory compliance requirements. Notices have been included in this publication to call attention to these specific requirements.

Symbol Meanings



Protective Earth: This symbol identifies a Protective Earth (PE) terminal, which is provided for connection of the supply system's protective earth (green or green/yellow) conductor.



Important: This symbol on the equipment refers you to important operating and maintenance (servicing) instructions within the Product Manual Documentation. Failure to heed this information may present a major risk of damage or injury to persons or equipment.



Warning: The symbol with the word “Warning” within the equipment manual indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.



CAUTION: The symbol with the word “Caution” within the equipment manual indicates a

potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in minor or moderate injury. It may also be used to alert against unsafe practices.




Warning Hazardous Voltages: This symbol is intended to alert the user to the presence of uninsulated “dangerous voltage” within the product enclosure that may be of sufficient magnitude to constitute a risk of shock to persons.




ESD Susceptibility: This symbol is used to alert the user that an electrical or electronic device or assembly is susceptible to damage from an ESD event.

Important Safety Instructions


1.  **Warning:** Read these instructions.
2. Keep these instructions.
3. Heed all warnings.
4. Follow all instructions.
5. Do not use this apparatus near water.
6. Clean only with a dry cloth.
7. Do not block any ventilation openings. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
8. Do not install near heat sources such as radiators, heat registers, stoves, or other apparatus (including amplifiers) that produce heat.
9. Do not defeat the safety purpose of the polarized or grounding-type plug. A polarized plug has two blades with one wider than the other. A grounding type plug has two blades and a third grounding prong. The third prong is provided for your safety. If the provided plug does not fit into your outlet, consult an electrician for replacement of the obsolete outlet.
10. Protect the power cord from being walked on or pinched, particularly at plugs, convenience receptacles, and the point where they exit from the apparatus.
11. Only use attachments/accessories specified by the manufacturer.
12. Unplug this apparatus during lightning storms or when unused for long periods of time.
13. Refer all servicing to qualified service personnel. Servicing is required when the apparatus has been damaged in any way,


such as when the power-supply cord or plug is damaged, liquid has been spilled or objects have fallen into the apparatus, the apparatus has been exposed to rain or moisture, does not operate normally, or has been dropped.

14. Do not expose this apparatus to dripping or splashing, and ensure that no objects filled with liquids, such as vases, are placed on the apparatus.
15. To completely disconnect this apparatus from the AC Mains, disconnect the power supply cord plug from the AC receptacle.
16. The mains plug of the power supply cord shall remain readily operable.

17.  **Warning:** Indoor Use: To reduce the risk of fire or electric shock, do not expose this apparatus to rain or moisture.

18. The safe operation of this product requires that a protective earth connection be provided. A grounding conductor in the equipment's supply cord provides this protective earth. To reduce the risk of electrical shock to the operator and service personnel, this ground conductor must be connected to an earthed ground.


19.  **Warning:** This apparatus, when equipped with multiple power supplies, can generate high leakage currents. To reduce the risk of electric shock, ensure that each individual supply cord is connected to its own separate branch circuit with an earth connection.


20.  **CAUTION:** These service instructions are for use by qualified service personnel only. To reduce the risk of electric shock, do not perform any servicing other than that contained in the operating instructions unless you are qualified to do so.

21. Service barriers within this product are intended to protect the operator and service personnel from hazardous voltages. For continued safety, replace all barriers after servicing.
22. Certain parts of this equipment still present a safety hazard with the power switch in the OFF position. To avoid electrical shock, disconnect all A/C power cords from the chassis' rear appliance connectors before servicing.
23. This product contains safety critical parts, which, if incorrectly replaced, may present a risk of fire or electrical shock. Components


contained within the product's power supplies and power supply area are not intended to be customer-serviced and should be returned to the factory for repair.

24. To reduce the risk of fire, replacement fuses must be the same type and rating.
25. Use only power cords specified for this product and certified for the country of use.
26. The safe operation of this equipment requires that the user heed and adhere to all installation and servicing instruction contained within the equipment's Setup Manuals.

27.  **Warning:** This product includes an " Ethernet Port " which allows this product to be connected to a local area network (LAN). Only connect to networks that remain inside the building. Do not connect to networks that go outside the building.


28.  **CAUTION:** Hazardous Energy Levels are present on the chassis midplane where I/O card resettable fuses are located. Access to the inside chassis areas is restricted to service personnel only. Refer to the Installation and Diagnostic instruction sections for important information on the means to avoid this hazard.

29. The socket-outlet shall be installed near the equipment and shall be easily accessible.

30.  **CAUTION:** This apparatus contains a Lithium battery, which if replaced incorrectly, or with an incorrect type, may cause an explosion. Replace only with a CR2032 coin type lithium battery. Dispose of used batteries according to the manufacturer's instruction by qualified service personnel.

31. For use at altitude 2000m or lower.

32. For use in non-tropical locations.

33.  **CAUTION:** Do not make mechanical or electrical modifications to the equipment or add metallic items, such as metallic foil labels, to the printed circuit boards. Modifications can impair regulatory compliance, or performance and may void your warranty.

EMC Notices

United States of America — FCC Part 15

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a class A Digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when

the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense.



Important: Changes or modifications to this equipment not expressly approved by Ross Video Limited could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

Canada

This Class “A” digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

Cet appareil numérique de la classe “A” est conforme à la norme NMB-003 du Canada.

Korea — Class A Statement

이 기기는 업무용 환경에서 사용할 목적으로 적합성 평가를 받은 기기로서 가정용 환경에서 사용하는 경우 전파간섭의 우려가 있습니다.

This device has been evaluated for conformity for use in a business environment. When used in a home environment, there is a danger of interference.

Europe

This equipment is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of **CE Directive 93/68/EEC**.

International

This equipment has been tested to **CISPR 22:1997** along with amendments **A1:2000** and **A2:2002**, and found to comply with the limits for a Class A Digital device.



Important: This is a Class A product. In domestic environments, this product may cause radio interference, in which case the user may have to take adequate measures.

CE/C-Tick Approval

The equipment meets the requirements of the Australian Communications and Media Authority (Limits & Methods Of Measurement Of Radio Interference Characteristics Of Information Technology Equipment (EN55022/CISPR 22)).

General Handling Guidelines

- Careful handling, using proper ESD precautions, must be observed.
- Power down the system before PCB removal.

A Word About Static Discharge

Throughout the many procedures in this manual, please observe all static discharge precautions.



CAUTION: Avoid handling the switcher circuit boards in high static environments such as carpeted areas, and when synthetic fiber clothing is worn. Touch the frame to dissipate static charge before removing boards from the frame, and exercise proper grounding precautions when working on circuit boards. Exercise proper grounding precautions when working on circuit boards.

Warranty and Repair Policy

Ross Video Limited (Ross) warrants its switchers and related options, to be free from defects under normal use and service for a period of **ONE YEAR** from the date of shipment. Fader handle assemblies are warranted for the life of the product. If an item becomes defective within the warranty period Ross will repair or replace the defective item, as determined solely by Ross.

Warranty repairs will be conducted at Ross, with all shipping FOB Ross dock. If repairs are conducted at the customer site, reasonable out-of-pocket charges will apply. At the discretion of Ross, and on a temporary loan basis, plug in circuit boards or other replacement parts may be supplied free of charge while defective items undergo repair. Return packing, shipping, and special handling costs are the responsibility of the customer.

Software upgrades for switchers may occur from time to time, and are determined by Ross Video. The upgrades are posted on the Ross Video website, and are free of charge for the life of the switcher.

This warranty is void if products are subjected to misuse, neglect, accident, improper installation or application, or unauthorized modification.

In no event shall Ross Video Limited be liable for direct, indirect, special, incidental, or consequential damages (including loss of profit). Implied warranties, including that of merchantability and fitness for a particular

purpose, are expressly limited to the duration of this warranty.

This warranty is TRANSFERABLE to subsequent owners, subject to Ross Video's notification of change of ownership.

Environmental Information

Waste Electrical and Electronic Equipment Directive (WEEE Directive)

The equipment that you purchased required the extraction and use of natural resources for its production. It may contain hazardous substances that could impact health and the environment.

To avoid the potential release of those substances into the environment and to diminish the need for the extraction of natural resources, Ross Video encourages you to use the appropriate take-back systems. These systems will reuse or recycle most of the materials from your end-of-life equipment in an environmentally friendly and health conscious manner.

The crossed-out wheeled bin symbol invites you to use these systems.



If you need more information on the collection, reuse, and recycling systems, please contact your local or regional waste administration.

You can also contact Ross Video for more information on the environmental performances of our products.

Use of Hazardous Substances in Electrical and Electronic Products (China RoHS)

Ross Video Limited has reviewed all components and processes for compliance to:

“ Management Methods for the Restriction of the Use of Hazardous Substances in Electrical and Electronic Products ” also known as China RoHS.

The “ Environmentally Friendly Use Period ” (EFUP) and Hazardous Substance Tables have been established for all products. We are currently updating all of our Product Manuals.

The Hazardous substances tables are available on our website at: <http://www.rossvideo.com/about-ross/company-profile/green-practices/china-rohs.html>

电器电子产品中有毒物质的使用

Ross Video Limited 按照以下的标准对所有组件和流程进行了审查:

"电器电子产品有害物质限制使用管理办法" 也被称为中国RoHS。

所有产品都具有 "环保使用期限" (EFUP) 和有害物质表。目前, 我们正在 更新我们所有的产品手册。

有害物质表在我们的网站:

<http://www.rossvideo.com/about-ross/company-profile/green-practices/china-rohs.html>

Company Address

Ross Video Limited — 8 John Street Iroquois, Ontario, Canada, K0E 1K0

Ross Video Incorporated — P.O. Box 880, Ogdensburg, New York, USA, 13669-0880

General Business Office: (+1)613-652-4886

Fax: (+1)613-652-4425

Toll Free Technical Support (North America): 1-844-652-0645

Toll Free Technical Support (International): +800 1005 0100

Technical Support: (+1)613-652-4886

After Hours Emergency: (+1)613-349-0006

E-Mail (Support): techsupport@rossvideo.com

E-Mail (General): solutions@rossvideo.com

Website: www.rossvideo.com

Technical Support

At Ross Video, we take pride in the quality of our products, but if a problem does occur, help is as close as the nearest telephone.

Our 24-Hour Hot Line service ensures you have access to technical expertise around the clock. After-sales service and technical support are provided directly by Ross Video personnel.

During business hours (eastern standard time), technical support personnel are available by telephone. Outside of normal business hours and on weekends, a direct emergency technical support phone line is available. If the technical support personnel who is on call does not answer this line immediately, a voice message can be left and the call will be returned shortly. Our Technical support staff are available to react to any problem and to do whatever is necessary to ensure customer satisfaction.

Supporting Documentation

Ross Video provides a wide variety of helpful documentation for the setup and support of your equipment. Most of this documentation can be found either on the Product Resources disk that came with your equipment, on the Ross Video website (www.rossvideo.com), or on the Ross Video Community site (discussions.rossvideo.com/)

Carbonite Documentation

- **Carbonite Online Help for DashBoard** — visit help.rossvideo.com/carbonite
- **Operation Manual (4802DR-110)** — operational instructions for all Carbonite switchers
- **Carbonite Setup Manual (4802DR-120)** — setup and configuration instructions for Carbonite, Carbonite+, and Carbonite MultiMedia frames
- **Carbonite eXtreme Setup Manual (4803DR-120)** — setup and configuration instructions for Carbonite eXtreme frames
- **Carbonite QuickStart Poster (4802DR-200)** — setup information and specifications for the Carbonite, Carbonite+, and Carbonite MultiMedia frames
- **Carbonite eXtreme QuickStart Poster (4803DR-200)** — setup information and specifications for the Carbonite eXtreme frame
- **Upgrade Notes (4802DR-500)** — upgrade instructions, new features, and known issues for a given software version
- **Carbonite eXtreme Upgrade for NK-3G144-X** — upgrade instructions for the NK-3G144-X router to a Carbonite eXtreme switcher
- **Software Licenses (4802DR-502)** — third-party software licences
- **Carbonite Multilingual Safety Information (4802DR-503)** — translated product safety information
- **Carbonite Frame Fan Replacement (4802DR-300)** — instructions for replacing cooling fans in the Carbonite, Carbonite+, Carbonite MultiMedia, Carbonite Black, or Carbonite Black+ frames
- **Carbonite Frame RAM Replacement (4802DR-301)** — instructions for replacing the RAM in the Carbonite, Carbonite+, or Carbonite MultiMedia frames
- **Control Panel Desk Mounting (4802DR-302)** — desk mounting instructions for Carbonite control panel
- **1-2 ME Upgrade (4802DR-303)** — 1 to 2 ME upgrade instructions for C1-A and C1M control panels
- **SideBox Installation (4802DR-304)** — installation and mounting instruction for SideBox module
- **Auxiliary Control Panel Installation (4802DR-305)** — installation and mounting instruction for remote aux panel (CPS-AUX-053B)
- **C10 2 ME Upgrade (4802DR-306)** — 1 to 2 ME upgrade instructions for the C10 control panel
- **GVG100 Supported Command (4802DR-401)** — connection and GVG100 commands supported by the switcher
- **RossTalk Commands (4802DR-403)** — supported commands using RossTalk protocol
- **Device Setup Sheets (4802DR-6xx)** — setup information for controlling external devices from the switcher
- **Robotic Camera Control (4802DR-131)** — overview of the operational interface when controlling a robotic camera from the switcher
- **Audio Mixer Control (4802DR-132)** — overview of the operational interface when controlling an audio mixer from the switcher
- **Video Server Control (4802DR-133)** — overview of the operational interface when controlling a video server from the switcher
- **Configuration Guide (4802DR-100)** — product description and marketing codes for switchers and options
- **CarboNET Installation (4805DR-100)** — installation instructions for the Carbonite PMC translator.

NK Series Documentation

- **NK-IPS User Guide (9807DR-1004)** — setup information for the NK-IPS
- **NK Series Device Finder (9807DR-024)** — setup information for using Device Finder to set the IP address of an NK-IPS

Contents

Features.....14

Hot Swappable Boards.....	14
Clean Feed Output.....	14
3G and 1080p 29.97 Video Formats.....	14
Custom Controls.....	14
Device Control.....	14
DVE (Fly Key).....	14
Effects Dissolve.....	14
General Purpose Interface (GPI).....	14
Half ME.....	14
LiveEDL.....	15
Matte/Wash Generator.....	15
ME Effect System.....	15
Media-Store.....	15
MediaManager.....	15
MediaWipe.....	15
MemoryAI Recall Mode.....	15
Memory System.....	15
MiniME™.....	15
MultiScreen.....	16
MultiViewer.....	16
ViewControl.....	16
OverDrive® Caprica Support.....	16
Pattern and Matte/Wash Generators.....	16
Tally Outputs.....	16
UltraChrome.....	17
XPression Live CG.....	17

DashBoard.....18

Switcher Status in DashBoard.....	18
Configuration.....	18
Live Assist.....	18
PanelINK.....	18
To Assign a Page to a Custom Page Button.....	18
Custom Controls.....	19
ViewControl.....	19
MediaManager.....	19
Personality.....	19
Help.....	19

SoftPanel.....20

Menu Area.....	20
User Area.....	20
Control Area.....	20
Bus Area.....	21

Video Sources.....22

To Select a Source on a Bus from DashBoard.....	22
---	----

Video Layering.....23

Re-Entry.....	23
---------------	----

Re-Entry Timing.....	23
To Re-Enter an ME.....	23
FlexiClean Clean Feed.....	24

Video Preview.....25

MultiViewer.....	25
------------------	----

Matte Source.....26

To Set Up a Matte Color.....	26
To Set Up a Wash.....	26

Copying.....27

ME Copy.....	27
To Copy an ME.....	27
Key Copy.....	27
To Copy a Key.....	27
Key Swap.....	27
To Perform a Key Swap.....	27

Transitions.....28

Performing Transitions.....	28
To Perform a Transition.....	28
To Perform a Transition on TouchDrive (Memory Area).....	30
To Perform a Transition on TouchDrive (No Memory Area).....	31
To Perform a Transition on Carbonite Black.....	32
Cut Transitions.....	32
Dissolve Transitions.....	32
To Set Up a Dissolve.....	33
WhiteFlash.....	33
To Set Up a WhiteFlash.....	33
Wipe Transitions.....	33
To Set Up a Wipe.....	33
DVE Transitions.....	34
To Set Up a DVE Transition.....	34
MediaWipe Transitions.....	34
To Set Up a MediaWipe.....	35

Keying.....37

Self Keys.....	37
To Set Up a Self Key.....	37
Auto Select Keys.....	37
To Set Up an Auto Select Key.....	38
UltraChrome Chroma Key.....	38
Chroma Key Modes.....	38
Chroma Key Basic Mode.....	38
Chroma Key Advanced Mode.....	40
MiniME™ Chroma Key Output.....	42
DVE Keys.....	42
To Set Up a DVE Key.....	43
To Apply a DVE to a Key (Fly Key).....	43
To Apply a Border/Edge Softness to a DVE Key.....	44
Show Alpha.....	44

Masks.....	44	CarboNET Cabling.....	60
To Pattern Mask a Key.....	44	CarboNET Network Settings.....	61
To Box Mask a Key.....	45	DIP Switches	61
Split Keys.....	45	Troubleshooting.....	61
To Set Up a Split Key.....	45		
Memory Functions.....	46	Video Reference.....	62
Storing Memories.....	46	Supported Reference Formats.....	62
To Store a Memory.....	46	Reference and Video Mode Setup.....	62
Recalling Memories.....	46	To Set a Video Mode.....	62
Memory Attribute Color Coding.....	47	Switching Field.....	63
To Recall a Memory.....	47	To Set the Switching Field.....	63
Memory Attributes.....	48		
To Set the Memory Attributes.....	48	Switcher Modes.....	64
Deleting a Memory.....	49	To Set the Switcher Mode.....	64
To Delete a Memory.....	49		
		Router Inputs and Outputs.....	65
Switcher Sets.....	50	Switcher Inputs from the Router.....	65
To Store a Set.....	50	To Assign a Router Input to a Switcher	
To Load a Set.....	50	Input.....	65
Exporting the Working Set for Ultra and Ultrix		Switcher Outputs to the Router.....	65
Carbonite.....	51	To Assign a Switcher Output to a Router	
To Export the Working Set for Ultra and		Output.....	65
Ultrix Carbonite.....	51	Input Cable Equalization.....	65
		To Set Up Input Cable Equalization.....	65
Media-Store.....	52		
Working With Media-Store Animations.....	52	Video Inputs.....	66
Working With Media-Store Audio.....	52	Video Input Setup.....	66
Media-Store File Specifications.....	53	To Set up an External Video Input.....	66
Loading Stills or Animations.....	53	To Set up an Internal Video Input.....	66
To Load a Media Item.....	53	Source Names.....	67
MediaManager Channel Control.....	53	To Set Up a Source Name.....	67
Media-Store Attributes.....	54	To Save and Upload a Router Mnemonic	
Media-Store Capture.....	54	Names File.....	67
To Capture a Still From the Panel.....	55	To Assign a TSL ID to a Video Input.....	67
		Mnemonics.....	68
Custom Controls.....	56	To Customize Mnemonics for	
Recording/Editing Custom Controls.....	56	TouchDrive.....	68
To Record a Custom Control.....	56	To Customize Mnemonics for Carbonite	
To Edit a Custom Control.....	56	Black.....	68
Running a Custom Control.....	57	Auto Key Setup.....	68
To Run a Custom Control.....	57	To Set Up an Auto Key Association.....	69
Naming Custom Controls.....	57	GPI Device Control.....	69
To Name a Custom Control.....	57	To Assign a GPI to a Video Source.....	69
Deleting Custom Controls.....	58	Tallies Setup.....	70
To Delete a Custom Control.....	58	To Assign a Tally to an Input.....	70
Copying and Pasting Custom Controls.....	58	Custom Page Auto Follow.....	70
To Copy and Paste a Custom Control.....	58	To Assign a Page to a Custom Page	
		Button.....	70
Network Connections.....	59	To Assign a Custom Page to Follow an	
Network Setup.....	59	Input.....	70
To Connect DashBoard to the Frame.....	59	Substitution Table.....	71
To Change the IP Address.....	59	To Set Up a Pre-Tiled Source.....	71
FTP Connection.....	60		
To Create an FTP Connection.....	60	Video Outputs.....	72
CarboNET.....	60	Video Output Setup.....	72
		To Set up a Video Output.....	72

Output Re-Clocking and Data Rate Selection.....	72
To Set Up Output Re-Clocking and Data Rate Selection.....	73
Ancillary Data.....	73
To Strip or Pass Ancillary Data.....	73
FlexiClean Clean Feed.....	73
To Set Up Clean Feed.....	74
ME Follows.....	74
To Set Up an ME Follow.....	74
On-Air Setting.....	74
To Set the On-Air Status for an Output.....	74

MultiViewer.....	76
MultiViewer Output Formats.....	76
To Set Up a MultiViewer.....	76
To Set Up a MultiViewer Clock.....	77

MultiScreen / MiniME™	79
MiniME™ Assignment.....	79
To Set Up a MultiScreen.....	79

Frame Sync and Format Conversion.....	81
Supported FSFC Video Formats.....	81
To Set Up Input Mode FSFC.....	82
To Set Up Bus Mode FSFC.....	83
Aspect Ratio Conversion.....	83
Full.....	83
Zoom.....	83
Letterbox.....	84
Pillarbox.....	84
To Set an Aspect Ratio for 480i/576i.....	84

System Real-Time Clock/Date.....	85
To Set the System Real-Time Time and Date.....	85

Personality.....	86
Personality Settings.....	86
General Settings.....	86
Transition Settings.....	87
Memory Button Behavior.....	87
To Set the Memory Button Behavior.....	88
Memory Recall Behavior.....	88
To Set the Memory Recall Behavior.....	88
Router Mnemonics.....	88
To Set the Display Name for Router Mnemonics.....	88
Color Schemes.....	88
To Select a Color Scheme.....	88
To Create a Custom Color Scheme.....	88
Bus Maps.....	89
To Create a Bus Map.....	89
User Buttons.....	89
To Set A User Button.....	89

GPI Control.....	90
GPI Trigger Types.....	90
GPI Setup.....	90
To Set Up a GPI Input.....	90
To Set Up a GPI Output.....	91
GPI Output Triggers.....	91
To Assign a GPI Output to a Video Source.....	91

Live Edit Decision Lists (LiveEDL).....	93
LiveEDL Setup.....	93
To Set the LiveEDL Behavior.....	93
Timecode Setup.....	93
To Confirm External LTC Signal.....	93
To Set Up Communications with a TSC-9902.....	93
To Set the LTC Timecode Source.....	94
LiveEDL Data Capture.....	94
To Start Capturing EDL Data.....	94
To Stop Capturing and Save EDL Data.....	94

ViewControl (HD Only).....	96
ViewControl Overview.....	96
Custom Control Buttons.....	96
Bus Selection Buttons.....	96
Keyer Transition Buttons.....	96
Transition Buttons.....	96
Custom Control Button Setup.....	97
To Set up the Custom Control Buttons.....	97
ViewControl Setup.....	97
Connecting ViewControl over HDMI™	97

MultiPanel.....	99
To Set Up MultiPanel Permissions.....	99

Frame Cards.....	100
Rear Modules.....	100
To Install a Rear Module.....	100
Input/Output Cards.....	101
To Install or Remove a Card.....	101
Power Supplies.....	101
To Install or Remove a Power Supply.....	101

Diagnostics.....	103
Switcher Status.....	103
Switcher Logs.....	103
To Copy Logs To a USB.....	103
Diagnostics.....	104
Frame DIP Switches.....	104
To Run the Tally Test.....	104
To Run the GPI Input Test.....	104
To Run the GPI Output Test.....	104
Error Messages.....	104
Switcher Reset.....	105

Custom Reset Settings (RState).....	105
Factory Default Settings.....	105
Specifications.....	107
Carbonite Resources.....	107
Environmental Characteristics.....	107
Video Input Specifications.....	107
Video Output Specifications.....	107
Audio Specifications.....	107
Jitter.....	108
System Timing.....	108
Network Ports.....	108
Power Consumption.....	108
Ports.....	108
Serial Port.....	108
GPI Port.....	108
Tally Port.....	109
LTC Port.....	109
USB Port.....	109
Custom Control Events.....	110
Glossary.....	148
Index.....	151

Features

Thank you for buying a Ross Video Carbonite Black Series Multi-Definition Live Production Switcher. The Carbonite Black series builds on the Ross Video reputation for designing switchers that fit the needs of any production environment.

Hot Swappable Boards

The boards and power supplies in the 10RU Carbonite eXtreme frame are hot swappable. The resources, or sources provided by a board are lost when the board is removed.

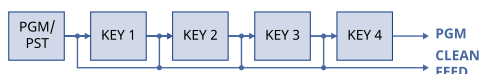


Important: Only qualified service personnel are allowed to replace or service system boards and/or cards.

Clean Feed Output

Clean feed is typically used for bilingual and live-to-tape productions. It provides a second Program output that is derived from a different location than the standard program output. A frequent application is the recording of shows for later airing without call-in phone numbers inserted.

The clean feed output can come from before or between the keys.



3G and 1080p 29.97 Video Formats

The switcher supports the 1080p 59.94Hz, 1080p 50Hz, and 1080p 29.97Hz video formats.

To operate in these modes, the switcher must be restarted and some features and resources are limited or unavailable.

Custom Controls

This feature brings the power of macros to the switcher operator. Button presses, menu selections, event commands, or even the switcher state can be recorded to a custom control with pauses or holds between the events. A simple button press can play these events back again. Step through complex show openings as easily as pressing Custom Control buttons 1, 2, then 3.

Device Control

The switcher can control a number of external devices, such as video servers and robotic cameras. For a complete list of supported devices, and information on how to set up and control these devices, visit the Ross Video website (rossvideo.com/production-switchers/carbonite/interface-list).

DVE (Fly Key)

The advanced 2D DVE comes standard with each switcher, and can be used for performing over the shoulder, or picture in picture shots. This allows all key types to be zoomed, cropped, and repositioned horizontally and vertically to create the look you want, or you can use one of the useful pre-built 2D effects to perform 2D background transitions.

Effects Dissolve

The Effects Dissolve feature allows you to interpolate from one memory to another using a memory recall. The switcher will interpolate from the starting memory to the destination memory, creating a smooth, two key frame effect.

Only elements such as clip level and pattern position can be interpolated in the effects dissolve. Other elements, such as crosspoint selection, pattern, and next transition data are recalled first, and then the switcher will slew to the recalled memory.

An effects dissolve can be performed on as many elements and MEs as required, based on the memory that is being recalled.

General Purpose Interface (GPI)

The switcher is equipped with 34 GPI I/Os that can be assigned as either an input or output independently.

The GPI inputs allow the switcher to interface with peripheral equipment such as editors. Each GPI input can be used to perform simple editing and switcher functions such as fade to black or an auto transition.

Half ME

The half ME option is available for any 2 ME Carbonite or Carbonite eXtreme switcher and

adds a third ME with only 2 keyers. The Half ME feature is not supported by Carbonite Black.

Table 1: Half ME vs. Full ME Comparison

	Half ME	Full ME
MiniME™	No	Yes
MultiScreen	No	Yes

LiveEDL

Edit Decision Lists (EDL) are files used by non-linear editing (NLE) suites to aid in post-production. Your switcher can capture EDL data in a file that you load into your NLE suite.

For information on using the LiveEDL feature, visit the Ross Video Website (rossvideo.com).

Matte/Wash Generator

A matte generator and complex wash generator per ME, capable of multi-color washes comes standard. Any one of the color generators can be assigned to MATTE, or wipe pattern edges. An additional simple color generator is available for an Aux Bus.

ME Effect System

The ME (Multi-level Effect) systems are standard. The number of MEs depends on the chosen switcher model.

Each ME provides 4 keyers supporting pattern mask, box mask, self-key, and linear key.

Media-Store

Up to 2 independent channels of still/animations are available switcher-wide, allowing for thousands of full screen stills and logos that can be cached and used on the switcher.

Media-Store provides 8 GB of cache. The number of images cached increases considerably when smaller, non-full screen images like logos are loaded from USB.

MediaManager

The MediaManager allows you to easily manage stills and animations on the switcher in a graphics interface.

MediaWipe

A MediaWipe allows you to use an animation from the Media-Store to play over a background or key transition. When the transition starts, the switcher plays the selected animation over top of the background and keys that are being transitioned. A cut, dissolve, wipe, or DVE wipe is then performed layered under the animation to bring up the next shot when the animation ends.

MemoryAI Recall Mode

We take the guessing out of memory recalls by ensuring that a memory recall will not affect what is currently on-air. MemoryAI uses the content of the memory to configure the Next Transition area and Preview bus for the background and keyers so that the next transition takes the same sources on-air that were on-air in the memory.

For example, store a memory that has a key on-air with CAM1 and CAM2 selected on the background. When this memory is recalled normally, it pops the same key on-air with CAM1 and CAM2 on the background. When the memory is recalled with MemoryAI turned on, CAM1 is selected on the preset bus, and CAM2 is selected on a key that is not on-air. The transition area is then set up for a background transition to bring CAM2 onto the background, take any on-air keys off, and take a key on-air with CAM1.

Memory System

Storage for 100 complete switcher snapshots per ME, MiniME™, MultiScreen, and chrome keys comes standard with all switchers. All of these memories can be stored to a USB media drive, providing custom tailored memories for every operator and every show.

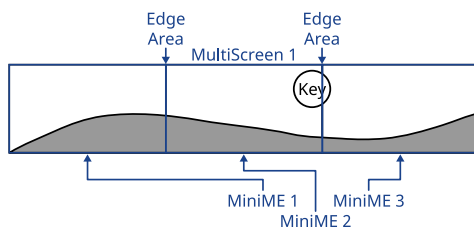
MiniME™

The MiniME™ is an additional ME that is provided with the switcher to perform basic dissolves and cuts. Each MiniME™ has 2 keyers, background, and preset buses. Unlike a full ME, the MiniME™ only supports dissolves and cuts, restricts key 1 to DVE keys only, and has no preview output. Key 2 on a MiniME™ is the same as an ME keyer. The MiniME™ shares all the same sources as the ME.

MultiScreen

The MultiScreen is made up of a number of MultiScreen generators. Each MultiScreen breaks the scene up into separate outputs (MiniME™ outputs) that can be sent to independent projectors or displays to make a unified picture.

Each screen in the MultiScreen output uses a MiniME™ to create the background and keys of the output.



MultiViewer

Each MultiViewer allows you to view up to 16 video sources (32 with Shift), in 47 different layouts, from a single output BNC. Any video source on the switcher, including ME Program, Preview, and Media-Store channels, can be routed to any box on the MultiViewer. All boxes on the MultiViewer output include mnemonic source names and red and green tallies.

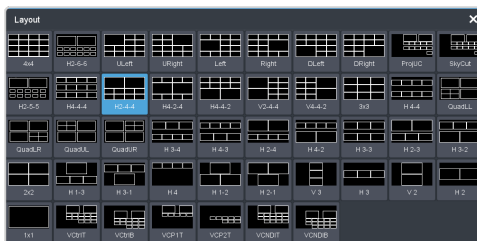


Figure 1: HD Layouts

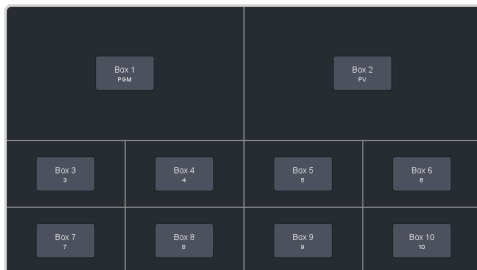


Figure 2: MultiViewer Grid

The Carbonite Black comes standard with 2 broadcast-quality integrated MultiViewer generators and the Carbonite Black+ comes standard with 5. The MultiViewer outputs on the Carbonite Black+ are only available on dedicated output BNCs. Each of these

MultiViewer outputs has a specific range of input and output BNCs that can be assigned to boxes on the MultiViewer.

Note: If the switcher is operating in a standard-definition or 3G video format, the MultiViewer automatically outputs high-definition, but each MultiViewer is only available on specific output BNCs.

ViewControl

The ViewControl touchscreen interface through DashBoard allows you to select sources on switcher buses, perform transitions, and run custom controls to recall memories or control external devices. The MultiViewer Shift function allows you to assign sources to a shifted set of MultiViewer boxes, expanding the number of sources available on ViewControl from 16 to 32.

Tip: It is recommended that the large Preview and Program boxes not be assigned shifted sources as they will follow the bus selecting.

ViewControl takes the MultiViewer output of the switcher and overlays the DashBoard interface over it. Bringing the MultiViewer output into DashBoard is accomplished either by using multiple SDI/HDMI™ converters or a single SDI to NDI® converter.

OverDrive® Caprica Support

Carbonite can be controlled from OverDrive® using the Caprica interface. This interface allows OverDrive® to perform memory recalls, transitions, and run custom controls on the switcher. For information on setting up Caprica to interface with the switcher, refer to the documentation that came with your Caprica server.

The switcher must be in a 2.5 ME mode or have 3 MEs installed to be controlled by Caprica.

Pattern and Matte/Wash Generators

A single pattern generator dedicated to wipes comes standard, and is equipped with 10 classic wipes. Most wipes can be rotated, bordered, multiplied, aspectized, and repositioned.

Tally Outputs

The switcher has assignable tally relays located in the rack frame. Each tally can be assigned to any number of combinations of input and output or bus.

UltraChrome

The UltraChrome chroma keyers uses advanced video processing technology to provide exceptional blue spill reduction and clean edges, even with difficult source material. Glass, smoke, translucent materials, and natural shadows are handled superbly.

There are 2 floating Chroma Keys that are available across all MEs.

XPression Live CG

Seamlessly combine the creative power of the Ross® XPression Designer software with the ease of use of your Ross® switcher. Create stunning still graphics using XPression Designer, and transfer them directly to an media-store channel on the switcher using the RossLinq interface. Up to two (2) channels with dedicated alpha can be controlled from the XPression Software Client. This feature supports still images only.

Each switcher comes with a single license of XPression. Additional licenses can be ordered.

DashBoard

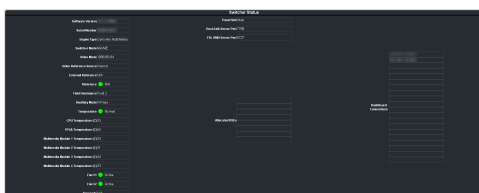
The DashBoard control system allows remote access to multiple pieces of Ross Video equipment, including openGear® cards, Carbonite production switchers, BlackStorm video servers, and ACID® UltraChromeHR cameras.

Download and install the latest version of DashBoard from <http://www.opengear.tv/>. Review the documentation that comes with DashBoard for information on installing and launching DashBoard.

Note: Carbonite eXtreme requires DashBoard v9.1, or higher.

Switcher Status in DashBoard

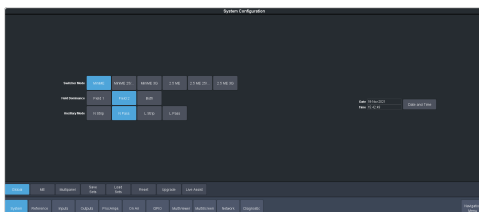
The DashBoard control system allows you to connect to the switcher and view status information for various components of the frame.



Tip: If the TouchDrive control panel is connected to the switcher, an additional tab for **Panel** is available that shows internal temperatures for that panel.

Configuration

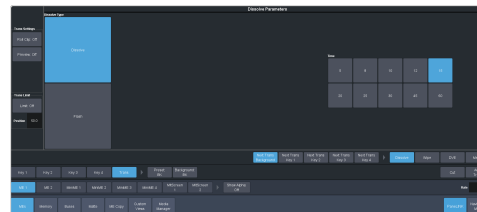
The Configuration node provides access to switcher settings such as Reference, Inputs, Outputs, and MultiViewer. You can switch between the different configurations by selecting the pages at the bottom of the DashBoard window.



Live Assist

The Live Assist node provides access to operational functions such as keying, transition, and memory settings of the switcher. You can switch between the different settings by

selecting the tabs at the bottom of the DashBoard window.



Tip: The **Custom Views** button on the **Live Assist** page opens a separate page where you can set up custom DashBoard pages. These custom pages can also be set to auto follow specific video sources. This allows you to have Live Assist show a specific custom page when a video source is selected.

PanelINK

PanelINK allows Live Assist to follow the button presses on the control panel and display the relevant tabs. For example, with **PanelINK** turned on, press **SEL** for any keyer and Live Assist shows the settings for that keyer. Press the **WIPE** buttons and Live Assist shows the transitions settings for a wipe. With **PanelINK** turned off, Live Assist does not switch between tabs.

Note: The PanelINK feature controls which DashBoard page or tab is shown. Turning PanelINK off does not lock the DashBoard menu and the current settings will update as selections are made on DashBoard or the control panel. For example, with PanelINK on selecting a keyer displays the Live Assist tab for that keyer. Select a different key type from the panel and the DashBoard menu changes to show the settings for that key type. If you turn PanelINK off, the DashBoard menu will continue to change with the different key types, but will not change to the Trans tab if you press a transition type button on the panel.



Note: PanelINK only works on the Live Assist page.

To Assign a Page to a Custom Page Button

The custom page buttons on the Live Assist page can be assigned any custom page or node in DashBoard. This allows you to quickly access controls from another device on DashBoard from Live Assist on your current device.

1. Click **Navigation Menu** > **Configuration** > **System** > **Live Assist**.



2. Click on the **Address** drop-down list for the custom page button you want to assign to a page.
3. Select the connection or custom panel that you want to assign to the custom page button.
 - **All Connections** — expand the list and select the device and node that you want to assign to the custom page button. Some older DashBoard nodes from plug-ins may not display properly on the Live Assist buttons.

***Note:** Do not assign the Live Assist page to a custom page on the same machine.*

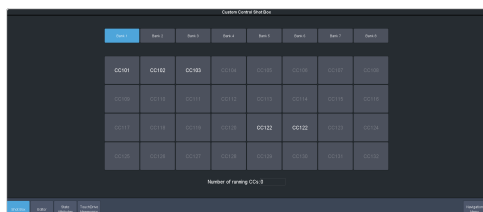
- **Open Panels** — expand the list and select the open custom panel you want to assign to the list. You must have the custom panel running on DashBoard for it to appear in the list.

***Tip:** Click **Clear** to remove the custom page and name assigned to that button.*

4. Click on the name field for the custom page button you are assigning a page to and enter a descriptive name for the custom page. The name appears on the button in Live Assist.

Custom Controls

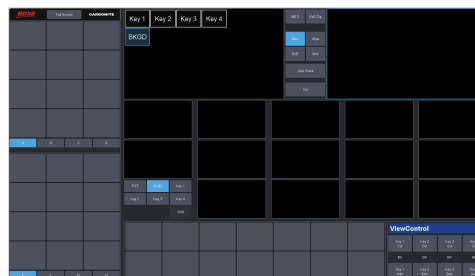
The Custom Control provides access to recording, editing, and running custom controls, as well as setting up the mnemonics for custom controls on the TouchDrive control panel.



ViewControl

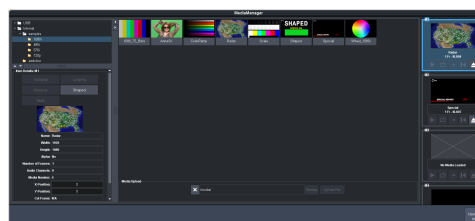
The ViewControl interface through DashBoard allows you to coordinate the control over the switcher through a touchscreen interface.

Through ViewControl you can select sources, perform transitions, and run custom controls.



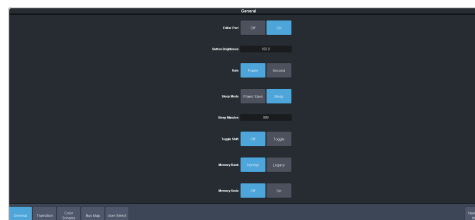
MediaManager

The MediaManager node allows you to control the Media-Store of the switcher. Upload media items, load media to channels, and set database elements..



Personality

The Personality node provides the switcher personality settings.



Help

The help node in DashBoard launches the integrated help system with full search capability.

SoftPanel

SoftPanel provides you with a graphical interface to the menu system and control surfaces of the switcher. This allows you to setup and control the switcher without a control panel.



Important: SoftPanel is a separate panel connection to the frame. Refer to [MultiPanel](#) on page 99 for information on setting up SoftPanel.

The screen can be broken up into several different functional areas. Each of these areas allows you to interact with different aspects of the switcher interface.

Menu Area

The menu area provides a graphic representation of the menu system on a Carbonite eXtreme control panel. The **Select**, **Up**, and **Down** buttons represent the actions of turning and pressing the knobs on the panel. The buttons in the top right corner allow you to navigate around in the menu tree, and the stylized mnemonic buttons at the bottom allow you to access different menus.



User Area

The user area allows you to select what the bus area is assigned to, or interact with a virtual positioner. Press the **ME/Key**, **Aux Bus**, or **Positioner** button to select how the user area appears.

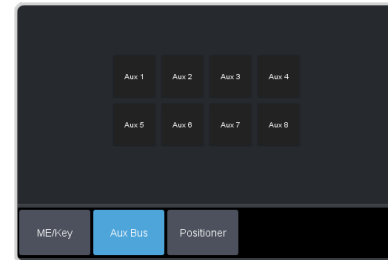
The **ME/Key** button allows you to select what the bus area is assigned to. Click **ME X**, **MiniME X**, or **MultSc X** to assign the bus area to that output. Click one of the **Key X Sel** buttons to assign the key bus in the bus area to that key.

Note: The SoftPanel only shows the buttons that apply to your configuration, hardware, and licences. Screen captures may not represent your system.



The **Aux Bus** button allows you to select one of the aux buses that the key bus row in the bus area is assigned to.

Note: The selection of one of the aux bus or key select buttons indicated what the key bus in the bus area is assigned to. You may have to switch between the **ME/Key** and **Aux Bus** buttons to see where the bus is assigned.



The **Positioner** button provides a virtual interface to the positioner. The positioner is used in device bus, or to move keys or masks around. Click and hold the positioner and move it around to emulate moving the positioner around. The slider to the right of the positioner emulated twisting the positioner knob on the panel. The button to the left of the positioner emulates the button on the top of the positioner knob on the panel.



Control Area

The control area (the upper right of the screen) contains the main Dashboard interface to the switcher. Click **Navigation Menu** and select the menu you want to navigate to. When the **Live Assist** menu is selected, the sub-menus will follow actions in the bus area when **PanelINK** is on.

Bus Area

The bus area provides a graphic representation of the panel row on the switcher. Use the user area buttons to assign the bus area to an ME, key, and aux bus. Sources are then selected on the key, program, and preset buses, and transitions are set up and performed with the transition buttons to the right of the source selection buttons.

Tip: Use the **Hold On** or **2Press** buttons to emulate a press and hold of a button. This allows you to press and hold one button and then press another.



Video Sources

The switcher has access to three basic types of video sources, external, internal, and follows.

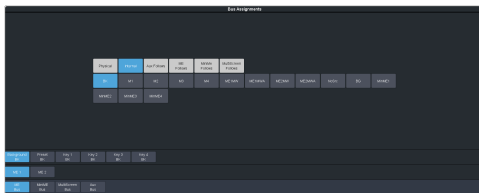
All video sources can be assigned to video source buttons. By pressing a video source button on a bus, the video source assigned to that button is selected on that bus.

- **External** — External video sources come from cameras, video servers, character generators, or other external devices into the switcher.
- **Internal** — Internal video sources come from internally generated video, such as Media-Store channels, matte color, and black.
- **Follows** — Follow video sources allow you to have one bus follow what is selected on another bus. For example, you can assign an Aux Bus to follow ME 1 Background so that a source selected on the background bus of ME 1 is also selected on the Aux Bus.

To Select a Source on a Bus from Dashboard

To select a video source on a bus, you must identify the ME, MiniME™, Aux, MultiScreen, or chroma key and bus you want to assign a video source to, and then press the source button you want to select on that bus.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Live Assist > Buses**.



2. Click a bus button to select the area that you want to select a source on. As you select different areas, the buses for that area are listed on the row above.
 - **ME Bus**
 - **MiniME Bus**
 - **MultiScreen Bus**
 - **Aux Bus**
3. Click the button for the specific bus or area you want to select a source on.

4. Select the background, preset, or keyer bus that you want to select a source on. (does not apply to Aux bus)

Note: Ensure that the source selected on the bus you want to enter onto the ME, MiniME™, MultiScreen, aux, or keyer is valid for that destination. If the source is not valid, you will not be able to select the bus on the ME, MiniME™, Aux, or keyer.

5. Select the type of source you want to assign to the bus and then select the source.
 - **Physical** — the sources on the physical input BNCs.
 - **Internal** — internally generated sources, including re-entries.
 - **Aux Follows** — use the source that is active on selected aux bus.
 - **ME Follows** — use the source that is active on selected ME bus.
 - **MiniME Follows** — use the source that is active on selected MiniME™ bus.
 - **MultiScreen Follows** — use the source that is active on selected MultiScreen bus.

Video Layering

How video is layered in the output of the switcher depends on how an ME is re-entered onto the other, and what keyers are on-air for the ME.

If we assume that each ME has all keyers on-air and that ME 1 is re-entered into ME 2, the layering will start with ME 1 Background and progress to the highest ME and keyer.

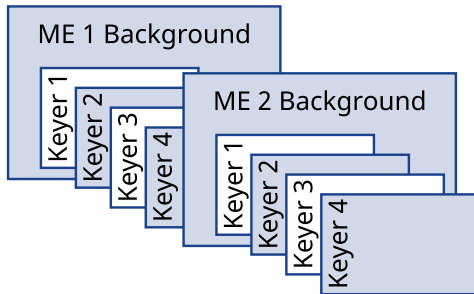


Figure 3: Video Layering

Tip: You can select a MiniME™ on an ME or different MiniME™ to re-enter it. Up to two MiniME™ re-entries, including an ME is allowed.

Re-Entry

Re-entry is the term used to describe the process of selecting another ME on an ME. For example, if you select ME 1 on ME 2, ME 1 is said to be re-entered onto ME 2. Re-entry takes the output of an ME and uses it as the background or key on the other ME. If you select an ME on the background bus, the ME becomes background video source of the other ME. If you select an ME on a Key Bus, the ME becomes the key source of the other ME.

Keep the following in mind:

Keep the following in mind when working with re-entries:

- You cannot re-enter ME 2 into ME 1.
- You cannot re-enter an ME, or the Clean Feed of an ME, into itself.

Re-Entry Timing

To maintain proper video timing through the switcher, each MiniME™ exists in a specific timing window relative to the MiniME™. These windows restrict what can be re-entered into what.

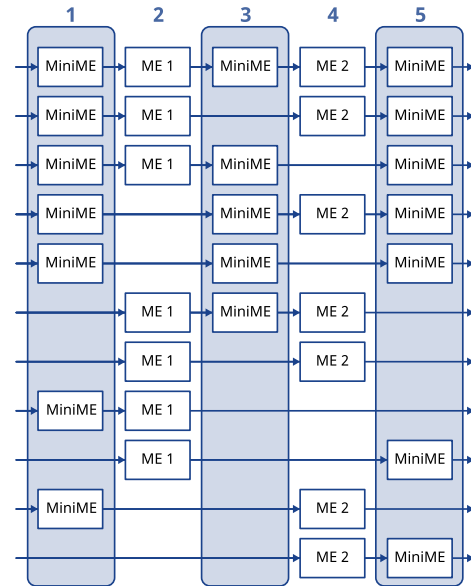


Figure 4: MiniME™ Timing Windows

To Re-Enter an ME

The process to re-enter any bus onto another is the same as re-entering an ME onto another ME.

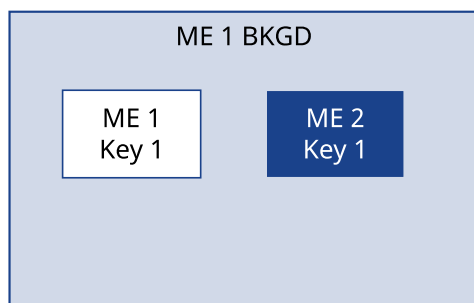
1. Set up ME 1 with a background and a key.



2. Set up ME 2 with a key.



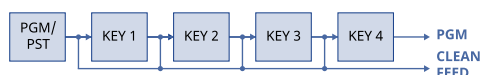
3. Select ME 1 as a source on the Background Bus of ME 2. Notice that the output of ME 1 is now being used as the background of ME 2.



FlexiClean Clean Feed

FlexiClean provides a second program output that is derived from a different location than the standard program output. A frequent application is the recording of shows for later airing without call-in phone numbers inserted.

The clean feed output can come from before or between the keyers.



Video Preview

Video preview allows you to use an additional monitor to preview what the next shot is going to be.

The preview for an ME shows what is selected for the next transition on that ME. This includes the keys and background video sources that will be on-air after the next transition.

MultiViewer

Each MultiViewer allows you to view up to 16 video sources (32 with Shift), in 47 different layouts, from a single output BNC. Any video source on the switcher, including ME Program, Preview, and Media-Store channels, can be routed to any box on the MultiViewer. All boxes on the MultiViewer output include mnemonic source names and red and green tallies.

Matte Source

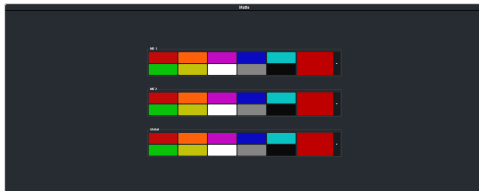
Matte color backgrounds (**BG**) are color signals that can be applied to backgrounds and keys. Color selection is done either by picking a preset color, or by adjusted hue, saturation, and luminance to create a custom color.

Select the matte generator (**BG**) on a background or key bus. The full region of the background or key is filled with the selected color.

Note: A color background can be a solid color, or a wash of two colors.

To Set Up a Matte Color

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Live Assist > Matte**.



2. Select the matte generator that you want to set the color for.
 - **ME X** — set the color for the color background source on the selected ME.
 - **Global** — set the color for the global matte generator.
3. Click one of the preset colors to assign that color to the selected matte generator.

*Tip: You can select a custom color by clicking the color box to the right of the preset colors and selecting a new custom color. Toggle **Live** on to show the color changes live on the matte generator source.*

To Set Up a Wash

A wash applies colors to a pattern selected for a matte. The first color is preset to the matte color, but both are selectable. Selecting the source button again, or **KEY SEL** button returns to this menu. Refer to the sections on mattes and patterns for information on setting them up. You can load a preset color instead of creating the first custom color.



Important: A control panel is required to perform this procedure. If you do not have access to a physical control panel, the SoftPanel can be used. The position of items on the menus on the SoftPanel may not match those of a physical panel.

1. Use the **Hue 1** knob to adjust the hue of the first custom color.
2. Use the **Sat 1** knob to adjust the saturation of the first custom color.
3. Use the **Lum 1** knob to adjust the luminance of the first custom color.
4. Press **NEXT**.
5. Use the **Wash** knob to select **On**.
6. Press **NEXT**.
7. Use the **Size** knob to select the size of the wash pattern.
8. Press **NEXT > NEXT > NEXT > NEXT**.
9. Use the **Hue 2** knob to adjust the hue of the second custom color.
10. Use the **Sat 2** knob to adjust the saturation of the second custom color.
11. Use the **Lum 2** knob to adjust the luminance of the second custom color.

Copying

You can copy the content of an ME or keyer to another ME or keyer.

ME Copy

You can copy the entire contents of an ME, MiniME™, or MultiScreen to another ME, MiniME™, or MultiScreen. The entire contents of the destination is replaced with the contents of the source.

When you copy an ME, the switcher tries to assign resources to the destination ME to match the source ME. If these resources are not available, the switcher may need to steal resources.

To Copy an ME

Copy the contents of an ME to another.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Live Assist > Copy**.



2. Click a **Destination** button to select the destination that you want to copy to.
3. Click a **Source** button to select the source you want to copy.
4. Click **Copy**.

Key Copy

You can copy the entire contents of a keyer to another keyer in the same, or a different ME. The entire contents of the destination keyer are replaced with the contents of the source keyer.

When you copy a key, the switcher tries to assign resources to the destination key to match the source key. If these resources are not available, the switcher steals resources in the following order:

1. From off-air keys that are not the source key.
2. From the source key, if it is not on-air.
3. From on-air keys that are not the source key.
4. From the source key, even if it is on-air.

To Copy a Key

This procedure copies the contents of Key 1 to Key 3 as an example. Use the same procedure for any key combination.



Important: A control panel is required to perform this procedure. If you do not have access to a physical control panel, the SoftPanel can be used. The position of items on the menus on the SoftPanel may not match those of a physical panel.

1. Press and hold the **KEY 3 SEL** button.
This is the destination keyer that you want to copy to.
2. Press the **KEY 1 SEL** button.
This is the source keyer that you want to copy from.

Key Swap

You can swap the entire contents of any two keyers in the same, or different MEs. The video source, position, and key type are all swapped between keyers. This allows you to change the apparent key priority, or layering, of the keys in the video output. For example, key 3 appears over key 2. If you perform a swap between key 3 and key 2, it appears as if key 2 is now over key 3.

Keep the following in mind:

Keep the following in mind when performing a key swap:

- Key swap does not change the on-air status of a keyer.
- If a DVE key is set to freeze, it will be unfrozen by the swap.
- A key swap can be recorded as part of a custom control.

To Perform a Key Swap

This procedure swaps the contents of Key 2 and Key 3 as an example. Use the same procedure for any key combination.



Important: A control panel is required to perform this procedure. If you do not have access to a physical control panel, the SoftPanel can be used. The position of items on the menus on the SoftPanel may not match those of a physical panel.

1. Press and hold the **KEY 2 SEL** button.
2. Press the **KEY 3** button in the transition area.

Transitions

Transitions are used to change the background video and take keys on and off-air. A transition can include any combinations of background and keyers for an ME, MiniME™, or MultiScreen. The background and each keyer can be transitioned independently.

Performing Transitions

What you can include in the transition, and the type of transition you can perform, depend on the number of resources you have, and if you are performing a background and keyer transition at the same time.

Keep the following in mind:

Keep the following in mind when performing transitions:

- If any of the sources going on-air have an assigned GPI output, the GPI output is triggered and the switcher then waits the configured pre-delay interval before performing the transition. If you perform a transition with the fader handle, the GPI output is triggered but the pre-delay interval is ignored.
- If any of the sources going on-air are assigned to a video server, you can have the video server play when the source is taken on-air by toggling **Roll Clip** on.
- If any of the sources going on-air are assigned to a video server, the switcher waits for the configured pre-delay interval before performing the transition. If you perform a transition with the fader handle, the pre-delay interval is ignored.
- If the fader is moved during an auto transition, control of the transition is passed to the fader. You must complete the transition with the fader. This allows you to override any auto transition in progress with the fader.
- The **Cut** and **Auto** buttons can be used to transition keys independently.
- You can pause an auto transition by pressing the **Auto Trans** button during the transition. Press the button again to continue the transition.
- If you turn the Transition Limit off when the transition has stopped at the transition limit point, the next transition starts from the

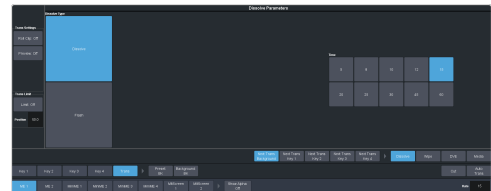
transition limit point and goes forward to complete the transition, instead of going back to the start.

- On a MiniME™, Background and key 2 only support Dissolve and Cut transitions.

To Perform a Transition

All transitions, with the exception of cuts on the background or key bus, have the same basic setup. The touchscreen menu system offers the touchscreen interface to setup and perform the transition.

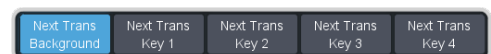
1. Click **Navigation Menu > Live Assist > MEs**.



2. Click the **ME X**, **MiniME X**, or **MultiScreen X** for the area you want to perform the transition on.
3. Select the video sources you want to take on-air on each bus. Background and keys are set up slightly differently but can be performed with the same transition.
 - **Background** — click **Trans > Preset** and select the new background source.
 - **Key On-Air** — click the **Key X > Key Fill** button for the key you want to take on-air and select the new source. Repeat this for each key you want to take on-air.
 - **Key Off-Air** — you don't need to select the keys at this point.

Tip: Refer to [To Select a Source on a Bus from DashBoard](#) on page 22 for information on selecting sources.

4. Click **Trans**.
5. In the Next Transition area, select the elements (Background and Keys) you want to include in the next transition. You can include any combination of background and keys, but at least one element must be selected.

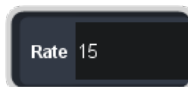


6. In the **Rate** field, enter the rate that you want the transition performed at. This is the speed, in frames, that it takes for the transition to complete. A Cut or manual

fader transitions do not use the transition rate.

- **Background** — enter a new ME transition rate, in frames, in the **Trans Rate** field.
- **Key Only** — enter a new key transition rate, in frames, in the **Key X Rate** for the key you want to transition.

Note: The key rate is only used for key only transitions. Keys included in with the background are transitioned at the ME Rate.



7. In the Transition area, select the type of auto transition you want to perform. If you want to perform a cut you do not need to select a transition type and can move to the next step.



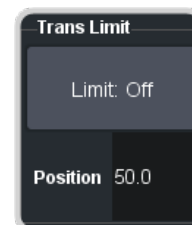
- **DISS** — perform a dissolve or WhiteFlash auto transition. Refer to [To Set Up a Dissolve](#) on page 33 or [To Set Up a WhiteFlash](#) on page 33 for more information.
- **WIPE** — perform a wipe auto transition. Refer to [To Set Up a Wipe](#) on page 33 for more information.
- **DVE** — perform a DVE auto transition. Refer to [To Set Up a DVE Transition](#) on page 34 for more information.
- **MEDIA WIPE** — perform a MediaWipe auto transition. Refer to [To Set Up a MediaWipe](#) on page 35 for more information.

8. Click a **Trans Settings** button to turn the setting on or off. The options available depend on the type of transition selected.



- **Roll Clip** — select whether you want any video server clips assigned to a source being taken on-air to play with the transition (**On**), or not (**Off**).
- **Preview** — preview the transition on the preview output **On**. You cannot preview the independent key-only transitions or a MiniME™ transition.
- **Flip Flop** — select whether the wipe runs forward during the first transition and then reverse during the second (**On**), or if it always runs in the same direction (**Off**).
- **Direction** — select the direction that the wipe travels.

9. Click **Limit** to turn trans limit **On** or **Off**. Enter a value for the trans limit in the **Position** field to set the point in a transition where an auto transition stops. When active, the point in the transition where the auto transition will stop is indicated by a flashing segment on the transition progress bar next to the fader handle on the control panel. The auto transition proceeds to this point and stops. The second auto transition starts from the transition limit point and goes back to where the first transition started.

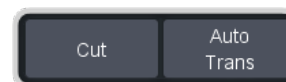


*Tip: The **Limit Position** is a percentage with 0 being the starting point of the transition and 100 being the ending point of the transition.*

10. Perform the transition.



Important: The **Cut** and **Auto** buttons trigger a transition on what has been selected. If **Trans** is selected a normal background transition is performed. If one of the keys is selected (**Key X**) a key-only transition is performed on the selected key.



- **Auto Trans** — click **Auto Trans**
- **Cut** — click **Cut**

*Tip: During an auto trans, press **Auto Trans** again to hold the transition at the current position or press **Cut** to abort the transition and return to the original source.*

11. If a pre-delay has been set, and **Roll Clip** is active, the switcher will apply the pre-delay interval before performing the transition.

To Perform a Transition on TouchDrive (Memory Area)

All transitions, with the exception of cuts on the background or key bus, have the same basic setup. The control panel offers physical buttons and mnemonics to setup and perform the transition. Some panels have a memory area that can be used to set the transition rates.

1. Select the preset or key sources that you want to transition to on the buses.

Tip: You can perform a quick, or hot, cut on the background bus by simply selecting a different source.

2. In the **Transition** area, select the elements you want to include with the transition. If you are including multiple elements, press and hold the first button and press the other buttons to include them in the same transition.

Note: A key should be included in the transition if it is going on-air or off-air. The transition changes the on-air state of the keyer. If a key is on-air, a red indicator is visible on the display just above the key and the **CUT** button for that key is red in the **Keyer** area.

3. In the **Transition** area, select the type of auto transition you want to perform. Refer to the manual that came with your switcher for information on setting up these transitions.

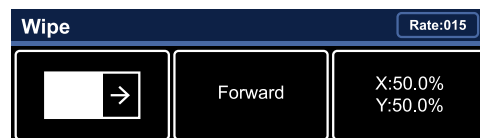
- **DISS** — perform a dissolve or WhiteFlash transition
- **WIPE** — perform a wipe transition
- **DVE** — perform a DVE transition
- **MEDIA WIPE** — perform a MediaWipe transition

Note: The **TRANS X** buttons are configurable and can be assigned different functions.

Tip: Press and hold **DISS** and press **Flash** on the row control menu to select a WhiteFlash transition.

4. The display in the **Transition** area shows the current setting for the transition type. Tap one of these settings to show additional options.

Tip: Live Assist follows the transition type selection and shows the settings for that transition type.



- **Left** — the left button shows the current pattern for the wipe or DVE transition. Tap the button and swipe left or right on the display to select a different pattern. For a MediaWipe the button shows the name of the media item being used for the transition.
- **Center** — the center button shows the current direction for the wipe, DVE, or MediaWipe transition. Tap the button and select a different direction for the transition to be performed in.
- **Right** — the right button shows the current position of the pattern for the wipe transition or the settings for the MediaWipe transition. Tap the button to have the 3-knob display show the position setting of the pattern and use the positioner to move the pattern around.

5. In the **Memory** area, enter the rate that you want the transition performed at. This is the speed, in frames, that it takes for the transition to complete. A Cut or manual fader transition does not use the transition rate.

- **Background** — press **ME RATE** and use the keypad to enter a new rate, in frames, and press **ENTER**. The rate is shown on the display on the **Transition** area.
- **Key Only** — press **KEY RATE** and use the keypad to enter a new rate, in frames, and press **ENTER**. The rate is shown on the **Keyer** area for each individual key.

Note: The **KEY RATE** is only used for key only transitions. Keys included in with the background are transitioned at the **ME Rate**.

6. Perform the transition.

- **Auto Transition** — press **AUTO**. The transition is performed at the set transition rate.
- **Cut** — press **CUT**.
- **Fader** — move the fader from one limit to the other. The rate at which you push the fader determines the speed of the transition.

- If a pre-delay has been set, and the **ROLL CLIP** button is active, the switcher will apply the pre-delay interval before performing the transition.

To Perform a Transition on TouchDrive (No Memory Area)

All transitions, with the exception of cuts on the background or key bus, have the same basic setup. The control panel offers physical buttons and mnemonics to setup and perform the transition.

- Select the preset or key sources that you want to transition to on the buses.

Tip: You can perform a quick, or hot, cut on the background bus by simply selecting a different source.

- In the **Transition** area, select the elements you want to include with the transition. If you are including multiple elements, press and hold the first button and press the other buttons to include them in the same transition.

Note: A key should be included in the transition if it is going on-air or off-air. The transition changes the on-air state of the keyer. If a key is on-air, a red indicator is visible on the display just above the key and the **CUT** button for that key is red in the **Keyer** area.

- In the **Transition** area, select the type of auto transition you want to perform. Refer to the manual that came with your switcher for information on setting up these transitions.

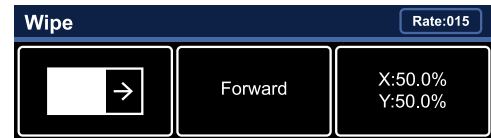
- DISS** — perform a dissolve or WhiteFlash transition
- WIPE** — perform a wipe transition
- DVE** — perform a DVE transition
- MEDIA WIPE** — perform a MediaWipe transition

Note: The **TRANS X** buttons are configurable and can be assigned different functions.

Tip: Press and hold **DISS** and press **Flash** on the row control menu to select a WhiteFlash transition.

- The display in the **Transition** area shows the current setting for the transition type. Tap one of these settings to show additional options.

Tip: Live Assist follows the transition type selection and shows the settings for that transition type.

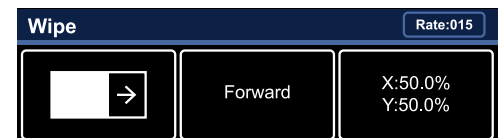


- Left** — the left button shows the current pattern for the wipe or DVE transition. Tap the button and swipe left or right on the display to select a different pattern. For a MediaWipe the button shows the name of the media item being used for the transition.
- Center** — the center button shows the current direction for the wipe, DVE, or MediaWipe transition. Tap the button and select a different direction for the transition to be performed in.
- Right** — the right button shows the current position of the pattern for the wipe transition or the settings for the MediaWipe transition. Tap the button to have the 3-knob display show the position setting of the pattern and use the positioner to move the pattern around.

- Set the rate for the transition you want to perform.

Background

- On the Transition area tap **Rate** and use the 3-knob menu to enter the new rate.



Key Only

Note: The **KEY RATE** is only used for key only transitions. Keys included in with the background are transitioned at the ME Rate.

- On the Keyer area tap the key you want to set the rate for.
- Tap **Rate** and use the 3-knob menu to enter the new rate.

- Perform the transition.

- Auto Transition** — press **AUTO**. The transition is performed at the set transition rate.
- Cut** — press **CUT**.

- **Fader** — move the fader from one limit to the other. The rate at which you push the fader determines the speed of the transition.

7. If a pre-delay has been set, and the **ROLL CLIP** button is active, the switcher will apply the pre-delay interval before performing the transition.

To Perform a Transition on Carbonite Black

All transitions, with the exception of cuts on the background or key bus, have the same basic setup. The control panel offers physical buttons and mnemonics to setup and perform the transition.

1. Select the preset or key sources that you want to transition to on the buses.

Tip: You can perform a quick, or hot, cut on the background bus by simply selecting a different source.

2. In the **Transition** area, select the elements you want to include with the transition. If you are including multiple elements, press and hold the first button and press the other buttons to include them in the same transition.

Note: A key should be included in the transition if it is going on-air or off-air. The transition changes the on-air state of the keyer. If a key is on-air, a red indicator is visible just above the include button for that key and the **CUT** button for that key is red in the **Keyer** area.

3. In the **Transition** area, select the type of auto transition you want to perform. Refer to the manual that came with your switcher for information on setting up these transitions.

- **DISS** — perform a dissolve or WhiteFlash transition
- **WIPE** — perform a wipe transition
- **DVE** — perform a DVE transition
- **MEDIA WIPE** — perform a MediaWipe transition

Note: The **USER** button is configurable and can be assigned different functions.

4. In the **Memory** area, enter the rate that you want the transition performed at. This is the speed, in frames, that it takes for the transition to complete. A Cut or manual fader transition does not use the transition rate.

Note: If your control panel does not have a memory area, you can use the **Time** knob on the 3-knob menu, or **DashBoard**, to set the background transition rate.

- **Background** — press **ME RATE** and use the keypad to enter a new rate, in frames, and press **ENTER**.
- **Key Only** — press **KEY RATE** and use the keypad to enter a new rate, in frames, and press **ENTER**.

Note: The **KEY RATE** is only used for key only transitions. Keys included in with the background are transitioned at the **ME Rate**.

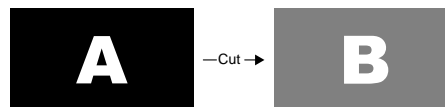
5. Perform the transition.

- **Auto Transition** — press **AUTO**. The transition is performed at the set transition rate.
- **Cut** — press **CUT**.
- **Fader** — move the fader from one limit to the other. The rate at which you push the fader determines the speed of the transition.

6. If a pre-delay has been set, and the **ROLL CLIP** button is active, the switcher will apply the pre-delay interval before performing the transition.

Cut Transitions

A Cut is an instantaneous transition between video sources. Unlike all the other transition types, there are no intermediate steps between the video source that is on-air, and the video source you are transitioning to.



A cut is performed either by selecting different sources on a background or key bus, or by pressing a **Cut** button.

Dissolve Transitions

A Dissolve is a gradual fade between video sources. For a Background transition, the video signal on the Background bus and the video signal on the Preset bus are mixed together until the Preset bus video signal completely replaces the Background bus video signal.



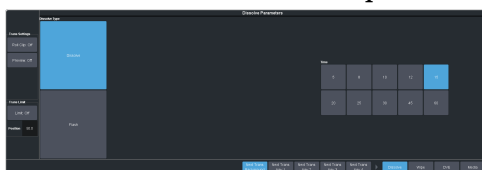
To Set Up a Dissolve

A dissolve transition requires that you set a background and key transition rate for the auto transition. A fader transition does not use the transition rate.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Live Assist > MEs** and select the ME that you want to perform the transition on.

Tip: You can use the same procedure for a MiniME™ or MultiScreen.

2. Click **Trans > Dissolve**, or press **DISS** in the **Transition** area on the control panel.



3. Click **Dissolve**.

WhiteFlash

Perform a two-step transition where a dissolve to and from white, or other selected color, is performed in the middle of the transition. The video signal on the Background bus is transitioned to a color background of the selected WhiteFlash color. The color background is then transitioned to the preset bus. WhiteFlash consumes a pattern generator for the transition.

Each ME has a separate WhiteFlash generator.

To Set Up a WhiteFlash

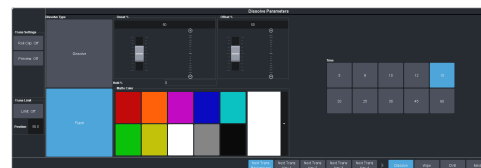
A WhiteFlash transition is performed just like a normal dissolve except that you must set the color for the flash and the rates for the onset, hold, and fade.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Live Assist > MEs** and select the ME that you want to perform the transition on.

Note: A WhiteFlash can only be performed on an ME.

2. Click **Trans > Dissolve**, or press **DISS** in the **Transition** area on the control panel.
3. Click **Flash**.

*Tip: The **DISS** button on the control panel flashes indicating a WhiteFlash transition has been selected.*



4. Use the **Onset %** and **Offset %** sliders to select the percentage of the transition that each phase of the WhiteFlash takes.
 - **Onset** — duration of the dissolve to the WhiteFlash color.
 - **Offset** — duration of the dissolve to the preset video source.
 - **Hold** — duration of the dissolve that the WhiteFlash color is held. This value is the residual of entire duration minus the onset and offset.
5. Select a default or custom color for the WhiteFlash.
 - **Default** — click one of the preset matte colors.
 - **Custom** — click the arrow to the right of the **Matte Color** area and use the **Hue**, **Saturation**, and **Lightness** sliders to select your own color. Click **OK** to apply the color or **Live** to apply it in real-time.

Wipe Transitions

A Wipe is a gradual transition where one video signal is replaced with another according to a wipe pattern. In the example below, a line wipe is being used.



For Key transitions, the key is wiped on or off-air with the transition and the background remains untouched. The duration of a wipe transition depends on either the transition rate for the ME, or the rate at which the fader is moved.

To Set Up a Wipe

A wipe transition requires that you select a wipe pattern, set the direction and number/size of wipe pattern, as well as set a background and key transition rate for the auto transition. A fader transition does not use the transition rate.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Live Assist > MEs** and select the ME that you want to perform the transition on.

Note: A wipe can only be performed on an ME.

2. Click **Trans > Wipe**, or press **WIPE** in the **Transition** area on the control panel.



3. In the **Wipe Pattern** area, select the pattern that you want to use for the wipe.
4. Set up the wipe pattern as required.
 - **Wipe Aspect** — adjust the aspect ratio of the wipe pattern. Not all patterns can be adjusted.
 - **H-Multiply** — multiply the pattern horizontally.
 - **V-Multiply** — multiply the pattern vertically.
 - **X-Position** — position the pattern on the x-axis.
 - **Y-Position** — position the pattern on the y-axis.
 - **Rotation** — rotate the pattern. Not all pattern can be rotated.
 - **Border Size** — apply a border to the pattern and adjust the size. At size 0 the border is off.
 - **Border Softness** — apply softness to the border.
 - **Border Color** — select a color for the border. You can choose between the predefined colors or use the color picker to select a custom color.

DVE Transitions

A DVE transition is a gradual transition where one video signal is replaced with another according to a 2D DVE pattern.

Keep the following in mind:

Keep the following in mind when performing DVE transitions:

- You must include the background when performing a DVE transition on a Chroma Key, Self Key, or Auto-Select Key. If you do not include the background, a dissolve transition is performed.
- Performing a DVE transition on a DVE Key without including the background scales the

transition effect to the size of the DVE Key. This transition does not consume an additional DVE resource.

- Performing a DVE transition on a DVE Key with the background included does not scale the transition effect. This transition consumes the second DVE resource.
- You cannot perform a DVE transition on a MultiScreen.
- You can only perform a DVE transition on a DVE key on a MiniME™. If the transition includes the Background, or a keyer that is not set as a DVE, the transition is switched to a dissolve.

To Set Up a DVE Transition

A DVE transition requires that you select the DVE pattern and duration for the transition.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Live Assist > MEs** and select the ME that you want to perform the transition on.
2. Click **Trans > DVE**, or press **DVE** in the **Transition** area on the control panel.



3. Click a **DVE Pattern** button to select the DVE wipe pattern you want to use.

MediaWipe Transitions

A MediaWipe allows you to use an animation to cover a transition. When the transition starts, the switcher plays the selected animation over top of the background and keys that are being transitioned. A MediaWipe can be used to cover a cut, dissolve, wipe, or DVE transition.

For a cut MediaWipe, the transition is performed when the cut point is reached. It is important to use a full-screen image in the animation at the cut point so that the cut is not visible on-air.

Keep the following in mind:

Keep the following in mind when performing MediaWipe:

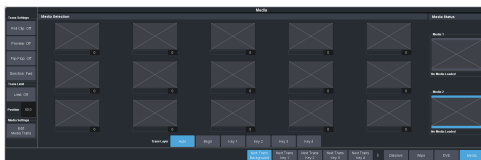
- Although you can select a still image for a media transition, it is not recommended.

- Only Auto Transition should be used for Media transitions. Using the fader to perform the transition manually could result in jumps in the animation.
- The duration of the transition (Time) is set by the length of the animation and the play speed of the animation.
- The audio associated with a MediaWipe is only available on the AES outputs.
- You cannot perform a MediaWipe transition on a MiniME™ or MultiScreen.
- If the Media-Store channel being used for a MediaWipe is set as a MSFS, the transition is switched to a standard dissolve.
- Only Media-Store channels 1 and 2 can be used for a MediaWipe.
- The MediaWipe can be set to occur between any of the keys or the background. When you set the layer to a specific key, the MediaWipe animation will cover that key, even if the key is not part of the transition. The animation plays over the key, but the key remains after the animation is finished. Any keys above the MediaWipe layer remain on top of the animation.

To Set Up a MediaWipe

A MediaWipe requires that you select the animation you want to use and then set up how you want to transition performed under the animation. This information is stored with the media item when you press save.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Live Assist > MEs** and select the ME that you want to perform the transition on.
2. Click **Trans > Media**, or press **MEDIA** in the **Transition** area on the control panel.



3. In the **Media Status** area, click a **Media X** button to select the channel you want to assign an animation to.
4. In the **Media Selection** area, click the thumbnail box for the animation you want to assign to the Media-Store channel.

Tip: Enter the media item number for a media item in the field below the thumbnail button assign that button to the media item.

Tip: Click **Page 1** or **Page 2** to move between the pages of MediaWipe animations.

5. In the **Trans Layer** area, select where the MediaWipe will occur.
 - **Auto** — MediaWipe occurs over highest number key in the transition.
 - **Bkgd** — MediaWipe occurs over the background, but under all keys.
 - **Key1** — MediaWipe occurs over the background and key 1, but under remaining keys.
 - **Key2** — MediaWipe occurs over the background and key 1 and 2, but under remaining keys.
 - **Key3** — MediaWipe occurs over the background and key 1, 2, and 3, but under key 4.
 - **Key4** — MediaWipe occurs over the background and all keys.



Important: If a key is above the MediaWipe layer and included in the MediaWipe transition, it will cut off-air with the transition. This is normally covered by the animation when the layer is above the key.

6. Click **Edit Media Trans**.



7. In the **Media Over** area, select the type of transition you want to use under the MediaWipe. This also allows you to set up the transition parameters for wipes and DVE transitions.
8. Click **Trans Time** and use the slider or fader in the **Transition** area on the control panel to set the start and end of the transition under the MediaWipe.
 - (Cut only) Use the **Cut Frame** slider to select the point for the cut, or move the fader to the point in the animation where you want the cut to happen and click **Cut at Fader Position**.
 - Use the **Start Trans At** slider to select the point where the transition starts, or move the fader to the point in the animation where you want the transition to start and click **Start Trans at Fader Position**.
 - Use the **Trans Rate** slider to select the duration of the dissolve, or move the

fader to the point where you want the transition to end and click **End Trans at Fader Position**.

Tip: If you select a negative start point for the transition, the transition will start first and then the animation will play after the start point duration has passed.

9. Click **Thumbnail** and use the **Thumbnail** slider to select a point in the animation that you want to use as a thumbnail for the MediaWipe. You can also use the fader to select the position and click **Generate Thumbnail at Fader Position**.
10. Click **Save** to save the new setting to the selected media item.
11. Click **Exit Edit Media Trans**.

Keying

Keying is the term used to describe when you insert (or electronically cut) portions of one scene into another, or place titles over background images. Keys are made up of two basic components, an alpha, that cuts the hole in the background video, and a fill, that fills the hole with different video.

Keys, like MEs, are layered onto the background video signal from the lowest numbered key to the highest on an ME.

Note: DashBoard Live Assist will not notify you of error messages or if a confirmation is required. For example, if there are no available resources for the DVE Key, or Chroma Key, you are trying to create, the switcher will not create the key and no notification will be shown.

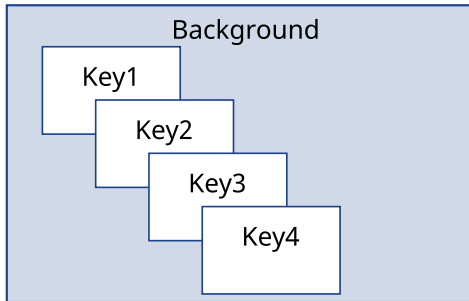


Figure 5: Key Priority

If you are using a MiniME™, key 1 only supports a DVE key type, and key 2 supports all key types. Key priority on a MiniME™ is the same as on an ME.

Tip: The Key Preview (**KEY PV**) button allows you to temporarily force the program output of the selected keyer to the preview output of the switcher. The ME remains in the key preview state for as long as you hold the **KEY PV** button, and returns to normal as soon as you release the button. You can also double-press the **KEY PV** button to latch the ME in the key preview state until the button is pressed again.

Self Keys

A Self Key is a key in which the luminance, or brightness, values of the key source are used as the alpha for the key.

To Set Up a Self Key

A self key is set up by selecting the keyer and video source you want to use, and adjusting the key parameters.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Live Assist > MEs** and select the ME and key that you want to set up.

Tip: You can use the same procedure for a MiniME™ or MultiScreen.

2. Click **Key Video** and select the video signal you want to use for the key.
3. Click **Self Key**.



Tip:

Tip: Click **Key Preview** to force the program output of the selected keyer to the preview output of the switcher.

Tip: Click **Make Linear** to return the clip and gain values to the default settings.

4. Use the **Clip** slider to remove lower-saturated colors from the video image.
5. Use the **Gain** slider to adjust the transition between the video image and the parts of the video image that are removed.
6. Use the **Transparency** knob to adjust the transparency of the key from opaque (**0**) to fully transparent (**100**).
7. Click **Key Invert** to reverse the polarity of the key alpha so that the holes in the background are cut by dark areas of the key alpha instead of bright areas.
8. Click a **Keyer Mode** button to override the shaped setting for the key.
 - **Normal** — set to a linear keyer for an unshaped source.
 - **Additive** — set to an additive keyer for a shaped source. The **Key Invert** function is disabled in this mode.
 - **Full** — set the alpha to fully opaque (white). The **Clip**, **Gain**, **Make Linear**, and **Key Invert** functions are disabled in this mode.
9. Click **Mask** to apply a mask to the key.

Auto Select Keys

An Auto Select key is a key in which two video signals are required to make the key. The alpha is used to cut the hole in the video and the fill is used to fill the hole. These signals often originate from external devices such as

character generators, external still stores, or other graphics systems.

To Set Up an Auto Select Key

An auto select key is set up by selecting the keyer and video source you want to use, and adjusting the key parameters. The pairing of the video and alpha video signals is done when configuring video inputs. Refer to the Setup Manual that came with your switcher for information on setting up Auto Keys.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Live Assist > MEs** and select the ME and key that you want to set up.

Tip: You can use the same procedure for a MiniME™ or MultiScreen.

2. Click **Key Video** and select the video signal you want to use for the key.
3. Click **Auto Select**.



Tip:

Tip: Click **Key Preview** to force the program output of the selected keyer to the preview output of the switcher.

Tip: Click **Make Linear** to return the clip and gain values to the default settings.

4. Use the **Clip** slider to remove lower-saturated colors from the video image.
5. Use the **Gain** slider to adjust the transition between the video image and the parts of the video image that are removed.
6. Use the **Transparency** knob to adjust the transparency of the key from opaque (**0**) to fully transparent (**100**).
7. Click **Key Invert** to reverse the polarity of the key alpha so that the holes in the background are cut by dark areas of the key alpha instead of bright areas.
8. Click a **Keyer Mode** button to override the shaped setting for the key.
 - **Normal** — set to a linear keyer for an unshaped source.
 - **Additive** — set to an additive keyer for a shaped source. The **Key Invert** function is disabled in this mode.

- **Full** — set the alpha to fully opaque (white). The **Clip**, **Gain**, **Make Linear**, and **Key Invert** functions are disabled in this mode.

9. Click **Mask** to apply a mask to the key.

UltraChrome Chroma Key

An UltraChrome Chroma Key is a key in which the hole is cut based on a color value, or hue, rather than a luminance value or alpha signal. The color is removed and replaced with background video from another source. The default color is blue.

Chroma Key adjustments are persistent and are not affected by a soft reset or switcher reboot. However, initializing the Chroma Key or performing a factory reset returns all adjustments to default values.

Chroma Key Modes

The UltraChrome Chroma Key operates in one of two modes, Basic or Advanced, depending on the complexity of the Chroma Key you are setting up.

- **Basic Mode** — In basic mode, UltraChrome provides a simple background/foreground chroma key with adjustment for background spill and edge softness.
- **Advanced Mode** — In advanced mode, UltraChrome provides advanced background shadow and translucency control, as well as control over background/foreground transition areas.

Although it is possible to switch back and forth between advanced and basic mode, the additional image correction of the advanced mode is only applied in the advanced mode. For example, if you use the basic mode to set up the Chroma Key and then switch to the advanced mode, the entire image may change as the image correctors provided by the advanced mode are applied at their default settings.

Chroma Key Basic Mode

The following chroma key parameters can be adjusted in Basic Mode:

- **Background Gain** — Allows you to modify the range of colors that are considered background and are masked out of the Chroma Key.

- **Edge Softness** — Allows you to adjust the amount of edge softening applied to the foreground. This helps blend the foreground into the new background.
- **Foreground Clip/Hue/Reject** — Allows you to modify the range of colors that are considered foreground and are not masked.
- **Spill Range** — Allows you to remove background color casts that may spill into the foreground image (green color cast on the foreground from a green-screen for example).

To Set Up a Chroma Key in Basic Mode

The UltraChrome chroma key tries to automatically adjust for the scene you are trying to chroma key. For the best results, initialize the key first, and then identify the areas where you need to adjust the key.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Live Assist > MEs** and select the ME and key that you want to set up.

Tip: You can use the same procedure for a MiniME™ or MultiScreen.

2. Click **Key Video** and select the video signal you want to use for the key.
3. Click **Chroma Key**.

Tip:

4. Click **Basic**.



5. Click the **Color** button for the color you want to key out.
6. Click **Init** to initialize the chroma key.
Every time the key is initialized, the switcher resets all the Chroma Key parameters to their default settings.
7. Click an **Additive Keying** button to turn it on or off.
 - **Off** — Reduces the level of detail in the edges of the chroma key as well as the overall noise in the key image that can be the result of certain lighting conditions or high detail camera settings. This is the default setting.

- **On** — Include the maximum detail in the edges of the chroma key.

8. Use the **Background Gain** slider to adjust the background gain.
 - Increasing the gain value causes the background to appear more opaque. This results in less of the background color being removed.
 - Decreasing the gain value causes the background to appear more transparent. This results in more of the background color being removed.
9. Use the **Edge Softness** slider to add or remove edge softening of the foreground image and alpha channel.
 - Increasing the softness value increases the amount of softness applied to the foreground edges and alpha channel.
 - Decreasing the softness value decreases the amount of softness applied to the foreground edges and alpha channel.
10. Use the **Foreground Clip** slider to adjust the foreground clipping.
 - Increasing the clip value removes lower-saturated colors from the foreground image.
 - Decreasing the clip value includes lower-saturated colors in the foreground image.
11. Use the **Foreground Hue** slider to select the central (base) color for the foreground.
 - Increasing the hue value moves counter-clockwise around the color wheel to select a base color.
 - Decreasing the hue value moves clockwise around the color wheel to select a base color.
12. Use the **Foreground Reject** slider to include or reject hues adjacent to the base color.
 - Increasing the Reject value decreases the amount of adjacent hues that are included in the foreground.
 - Decreasing the Reject value increases the amount of adjacent hues that are included in the foreground.
13. Use the **Spill Range** slider to remove any color cast onto the foreground.

- Increasing the range value causes more of the foreground colors to be corrected for background color spill.
- Decreasing the range value causes fewer of the foreground colors to be corrected for background color spill.

14. Click **Mask** to apply a mask to the key.

Chroma Key Advanced Mode

An UltraChrome chroma key, in advanced mode, breaks the image into five elements which determine, or partially determine, which part of the image is keyed out, or removed.

- **Background** — Background elements are those pixels in the source video that are the same color as the one you chose to key out. Note that the Shadow and translucent areas (see below) are completely contained within the Background area.
- **Shadow** — Shadow elements are those pixels in the source video with colors that are within the Background range, but with lower luminance values, depending on the shadow range. You modify the Shadow range to cover darker areas of the background (e.g. where the foreground is casting a shadow on the background screen).
- **Translucency** — Translucent elements are those pixels in the source video that are in the Background range, but with higher luminance values than the Shadow range. You can control the upper-end of the Translucency range by setting a wider hue-range to constrain the area. You can also control the transparency of the Translucent area.
- **Transition** — Transition elements are those pixels in the source video with colors that are not within any of the previous three ranges and are also not considered part of the Foreground area. These are typically the pixels near the edge of the foreground, where it blends into the background.
- **Foreground** — Foreground elements are those pixels that are not within the Background, Shadow, Translucency, or Transition ranges. This is the area with colors that will not be keyed out and will remain solid.
- **Spill Suppress** — Spill Suppression elements are those pixels in the Foreground that have a noticeable tint of the Background color. This typically occurs around the edge of the

foreground subject as glow from the background blue-screen or green-screen “spills” onto them.

- **Edge Softness** — Edge Softness lets you apply varying degrees of softening to the Foreground edges to help it blend in with the underlying background image that it is being keyed over.
- **Luminance** — Luminance allows you to control the overall brightness of Shadow, Translucency, and Transition areas as well as partial reflections to more closely match the Foreground brightness.

To Set Up a Chroma Key in Advanced Mode

The UltraChrome chroma key tries to automatically adjust for the scene you are trying to chroma key. For the best results, initialize the key first, and then identify the areas where you need to adjust the key.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Live Assist > MEs** and select the ME and key that you want to set up.

Tip: You can use the same procedure for a MiniME™ or MultiScreen.

2. Click **Key Video** and select the video signal you want to use for the key.
3. Click **Chroma Key**.

Tip:

4. Click **Advanced**.



5. Click the **Color** button for the color you want to key out.
6. Click **Init** to initialize the chroma key.
Every time the key is initialized, the switcher resets all the Chroma Key parameters to their default settings.
7. Click an **Additive Keying** button to turn it on or off.
 - **Off** — Reduces the level of detail in the edges of the chroma key as well as the overall noise in the key image that can be the result of certain lighting conditions or high detail camera settings. This is the default setting.

-
- **On** — Include the maximum detail in the edges of the chroma key.
8. Use the **Background Neg Hue** slider to adjust the range of hues that are included in the Background, expanding counter-clockwise around the color wheel.
 9. Use the **Background Pos Hue** slider to adjust the range of hues that are included in the Background, expanding clockwise around the color wheel.
 10. Use the **Background Sat** slider to adjust the saturation range of the background color.
 - Increasing the saturation range value includes a wider range of saturation values to be included in the background.
 - Decreasing the saturation range value includes a narrower range of saturation values to be included in the background.
 11. Use the **Edge Softness** slider to add or remove edge softening of the foreground image and alpha channel.
 - Increasing the softness value increases the amount of softness applied to the foreground edges and alpha channel.
 - Decreasing the softness value decreases the amount of softness applied to the foreground edges and alpha channel.
 12. Use the **Foreground Clip** slider to adjust the foreground clipping.
 - Increasing the clip value removes lower-saturated colors from the Foreground image.
 - Decreasing the clip value includes lower-saturated colors in the Foreground image.
 13. Use the **Foreground Hue** slider to select the central (base) color for the foreground.
 - Increasing the hue value moves counter-clockwise around the color wheel to select a base color.
 - Decreasing the hue value moves clockwise around the color wheel to select a base color.
 14. Use the **Foreground Reject** slider to include or reject hues adjacent to the base color.
 - Increasing the reject value decreases the amount of adjacent hues that are included in the foreground.
 - Decreasing the reject value increases the amount of adjacent hues that are included in the foreground.
 15. Use the **Background Suppress** slider to change the overall brightness of Shadow, Translucent, and Transition areas.
 - Increasing the background suppress value increases the brightness of Background, Translucent, and Transition areas.
 - Decreasing the background suppress value decreases the brightness of Background, Translucent, and Transition areas.
 16. Use the **Luminance Reflection** slider to change the brightness of semi-transparent reflections (like reflections from glasses).
 - Increasing the reflections value increases the brightness of semi-transparent reflections.
 - Decreasing the reflections value decreases the brightness of semi-transparent reflections.
 17. Use the **Shadow Gain** slider to adjust the shadow appearance.
 - Increasing the gain value creates darker shadows.
 - Decreasing the gain value creates lighter shadows.
 18. Use the **Shadow Range** slider to adjust the range of the shadow colors.
 - Increasing the range value widens the shadow area by including lower-luminance background colors. The increased range comes as a result of colors moving from the translucent area to the shadow area.
 - Decreasing the range value narrows the shadow area by excluding high-luminance colors. These excluded colors move back into the translucent area.
 19. Use the **Spill Clip** slider to adjust spill suppress clipping.
 - Increasing the clip value removes higher-saturated colors from spill suppress correction.
 - Decreasing the clip value includes higher-saturated colors in spill suppress
-

correction. If your foreground image contains bright-colored areas that are suffering from background spill, decrease the clip value to have it corrected.

20. Use the **Spill Hue** slider to select the central, or base, color for spill suppress correction. If the color spill does not appear to be the same color as the background, use this control to adjust which hue is considered to be "spilled" into the foreground.

- Increasing the hue value moves counter-clockwise around the color wheel while selecting a base color.
- Decreasing the hue value moves clockwise around the color wheel while selecting a base color.

21. Use the **Spill Reject** slider to include or reject adjacent hues to the base.

- Increasing the reject value increases the amount of adjacent hues that are included in spill correction.
- Decreasing the reject value decreases the amount of adjacent hues that are included in spill correction.

22. Use the **Transition Gain** slider to adjust the appearance of the Transition colors.

- Increasing the gain value makes the transition area pixels more opaque.
- Decreasing the gain value makes the transition area pixels more transparent.

23. Use the **Translucency Gain** slider to adjust the appearance of the translucent colors.

- Increasing the gain value causes the translucent colors to appear more opaque.
- Decreasing the gain value causes the translucent colors to appear more transparent.

24. Use the **Translucency Range** slider to adjust the range of the translucent colors.

- Increasing the range value widens the translucent area by including more hues from the background range (the lower-end of the range is defined by the shadow range you just set).
- Decreasing the range value narrows the translucent area by excluding hues.

25. Click **Mask** to apply a mask to the key.

MiniME™ Chroma Key Output

You can use a MiniME™ to output a chroma key fill and alpha. This allows you to use the switcher as a chroma key generator for a virtual set environment.

Keep the following in mind:

Keep the following in mind when setting up an external chroma key output.

- Only Key 2 from a MiniME™ can be used to output the video/fill of the chroma key. Key 1 must be set to black and off-air.
- All ancillary data is stripped from the video source.

To Set Up a MiniME™ Chroma Key Output

The fill of the chroma key is fed out of the MiniME™ keyer and the alpha is fed out of the selected output.

Note: This procedure uses MiniME™ 4 for the chroma key output, but you can use any MiniME™.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Live Assist > MEs > MiniME 4.**
2. Click **Key 1.**
3. Click **Key Fill:** and select **Black.**
4. Click **Key 2.**
5. Click **Key Fill** and select the video source that you want to chroma key.
6. Click **Chroma Key** and initialize the key as normal.
7. Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > Outputs.**
8. Click the **Source** button for the output that you want to feed the chroma key fill from and click **MiniME4.**
9. Click the **Source** button for the output that you want to feed the chroma key alpha from and click **MMCKA4.**

DVE Keys

The DVE key allows you to apply digital video effects, such as scale, crop, aspect ratio, position, and border to a video image or another key type. When the DVE is applied to another key type, it is said to be flying (Fly Key).

Tip: You can see where DVE channels are allocated from the **Status** page in DashBoard.

Keep the following in mind:

Keep the following in mind when working with a Fly Key:

- The Fly Key feature consumes a single DVE channel for self keys and chroma keys, but two DVE channels for an auto select key.
- The Fly Key feature cannot be applied to a DVE key.
- The Key Invert feature is not available for a Fly Key.
- The self key Fly Key can be used with all MultiScreen layouts. The auto select key Fly Key can only be used with the Dual Vert or Dual Horiz MultiScreen layouts.
- A chroma key should be initialized and adjusted before the DVE (Fly Key) is applied to it.

To Set Up a DVE Key

The DVE engine allows you to apply digital video effects, such as scale, crop, aspect ratio, position, and border to a video image in 2D space.

The DVE resources for this key may not be available. Depending on how your switcher is configured, you may be asked to steal the resources from another element, or be prevented from using the resources.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Live Assist > MEs** and select the ME and key that you want to set up.

Tip: You can use the same procedure for a MiniME™ or MultiScreen.

2. Click **Key Video** and select the video signal you want to use for the key.
3. Click **DVE Key**.



Tip:

Tip: Click **Key Preview** to force the program output of the selected keyer to the preview output of the switcher.

4. Use the **X-Position**, **Y-Position**, and **Size** sliders in the **Positioning** area to position and size the key.
5. Use the **Aspect** slider to adjust the aspect ratio of the key.

6. Use the **Left** and **Right** sliders to crop the left and right sides of the key.
7. Use the **Top** and **Bottom** sliders to crop the upper and lower sides of the key.
8. Click a **Freeze** button to freeze the video and appearance of the key (**On**). When a key is frozen, the DVE attributes are disabled and you can not move the key.
9. Click **Mask** to apply a mask to the key.

Refer to the section [To Apply a Border/Edge Softness to a DVE Key](#) on page 44 for information on applying a border to the key.

To Apply a DVE to a Key (Fly Key)

The Fly key is when the DVE engine is applied to another key type.

The DVE resources for this key may not be available. Depending on how your switcher is configured, you may be asked to steal the resources from another element, or be prevented from using the resources.

You should set up your key as you want it before applying the Fly Key.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Live Assist > MEs** and select the ME and key that you want to set up.
2. Click **DVE** and click **On**.



3. Use the **X-Position**, **Y-Position**, and **Size** sliders in the **Positioning** area to position and size the key.
4. Use the **Aspect** slider to adjust the aspect ratio of the key.
5. Use the **Size** and **Softness** sliders in the **Edge Softness** area to apply softness to the edges of to the key.

Refer to the section [To Apply a Border/Edge Softness to a DVE Key](#) on page 44 for information.

6. Use the **Left** and **Right** sliders to crop the left and right sides of the key.
7. Use the **Top** and **Bottom** sliders to crop the upper and lower sides of the key.
8. Click a **Freeze** button to freeze the video and appearance of the key (**On**). When a key is

frozen, the DVE attributes are disabled and you can not move the key.

To Apply a Border/Edge Softness to a DVE Key

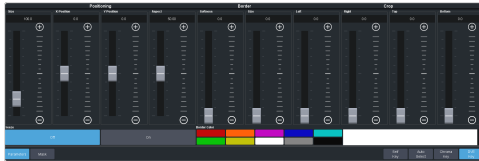
A DVE border or edge softness is applied to the edges of the DVE key and is manipulated as part of the key.

Note: You can only apply a border to a DVE key. Fly Keys, such as chroma keys or auto select keys with DVE applied to them cannot have a border applied to them. Instead, the selection is Edge Softness and is used to soften the edges of the key without any color.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Live Assist > MEs** and select the ME and key that you want to set up.

Tip: You can use the same procedure for a MiniME™ or MultiScreen.

2. Click **DVE Key**.



3. Use the **Size** slider in the **Border** area to turn on the border and adjust the size of the border around the key.
4. Use the **Softness** slider to adjust the softness of the border.
5. Select a default or custom color for the border (borders only).
 - **Default** — click one of the preset colors.
 - **Custom** — click the arrow to the right of the **Border Color** area and use the **Hue**, **Saturation**, and **Lightness** sliders to select your own color. Click **OK** to apply the color or **Live** to apply it in real-time.

Show Alpha

You to route the processed alpha for the selected keyer to the preview output for the ME you are working on.

Show alpha is not available on a MiniME™ or MultiScreen.

- Select the keyer that you want to show the alpha for and press and hold the **SHOW ALPHA** button on the control panel. The preview output of the ME shows the

processed alpha of the selected key until the button is released.

- Select the keyer that you want to show the alpha for and double-press the **SHOW ALPHA** button. The preview output of the ME shows the processed alpha of the selected key until the button is pressed again.
- Toggle the **Show Alpha** button on from the Live Assist.

Masks

A Mask is a technique in which a pattern is combined with the key source to block out unwanted portions of the key source.

Two types of masks are available, Box masks and Pattern masks. All key types can be masked.

- **Box Mask** — uses a simple box shape to mask out a portion of the key
- **Pattern Mask** — uses a pattern from the pattern generator to mask out a portion of the key

To Pattern Mask a Key

Pattern masks can be adjusted for size, location, rotation, and multiplication.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Live Assist > MEs** and select the ME and key that you want to set up.

Tip: You can use the same procedure for a MiniME™ or MultiScreen.

2. Click **Mask > Pattern**.



3. Select the pattern you want to use for the mask.
4. Click **Mask Force** to force the area inside the mask region to the foreground.
5. Click **Mask Invert** to invert the masked area with the unmasked area.
6. Set up the mask pattern as required.
 - **Size** — adjust the size of the mask region.
 - **Softness** — apply softness to the edges of the mask region.
 - **Border Size** — apply a border to the mask region and adjust the size. At size 0 the border is off.

- **Aspect** — adjust the aspect ratio of the mask. Not all patterns allow you to adjust the aspect.
- **Rotation** — rotate the mask pattern. Not all patterns can be rotated
- **H-Multiply** — multiply the mask pattern horizontally.
- **V-Multiply** — multiply the mask pattern vertically.
- **X-Position** — position the mask on the x-axis.
- **Y-Position** — position the mask on the y-axis.

To Box Mask a Key

Box masks can be adjusted for size, location, rotation, and multiplication.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Live Assist > MEs** and select the ME and key that you want to set up.

Tip: You can use the same procedure for a MiniME™ or MultiScreen.

2. Click **Mask > Box**.



3. Click **Mask Force** to force the area inside the mask region to the foreground.
4. Click **Mask Invert** to invert the masked area with the unmasked area.
5. Set up the mask as required.
 - **Size** — adjust the size of the mask region.
 - **Left Edge** — adjust the position of the left edge of the mask region.
 - **Right Edge** — adjust the position of the right edge of the mask region.
 - **Top Edge** — adjust the position of the top edge of the mask region.
 - **Bottom Edge** — adjust the position of the bottom edge of the mask region.
 - **X-Position** — position the mask on the x-axis. This adjust both the left and right edges at the same time.
 - **Y-Position** — position the mask on the y-axis. This adjusts both the top and bottom edges at the same time.

Tip: You can use the Positioner to adjust the size and position of the box mask.

Split Keys

A Split key allows you to assign a different alpha source for a key than the fill/alpha associations that are set up during configuration, or to use a separate alpha source for a Self key.

A split key can be applied to an auto select, or self key.

To Set Up a Split Key

A split key works on an **Auto Select** or **Self Key** that has been set up and you want to apply a different alpha to.

1. Set up your key with the video source you want to use.
2. Click **Navigation Menu > Live Assist** and select the key you want split.

*Tip: From the control panel, press and hold the **SELF** or **AUTO** (depending on the type of key you are splitting) and press the source button for the new alpha you want to use.*

3. Click **Key Alpha** and select the new alpha you want to use.

Memory Functions

A memory register is a snapshot of the current state of the switcher that can include one or multiple ME, MiniME™, MultiScreen, or chroma key outputs.

Up to 100 memory registers per ME, MiniME™, MultiScreen, or chroma key can be stored and recalled on the switcher. Each of these memory registers can store as little as the information of one ME, or as much as the current state of the entire switcher, including all ME, MiniME™, MultiScreen, chroma key outputs, Aux Buses, and DVE settings.

Storing Memories

When you store a memory, you are storing the complete state of that panel row. This includes the current state of all the areas on the ME, including keyer settings, transition rates, wipe and pattern selections, and source selections. In addition to the current state of the panel, the current settings for the various keyers, such as chroma key settings, and clip and gain settings, are also stored.

To Store a Memory

How to store a memory.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Live Assist > Memory > Store > General**.



2. In the **Inclusions** area, select the ME, MiniME™, and MultiScreen that you want to store the memory for. When you include an area in a memory, the current state of that area is stored in the memory and will be recalled with the memory.
3. In the **Memory Store** area, click the **Bank X** and **X:Mem** button for the bank and memory register that you want to store to.

Tip: If a memory register contains a memory for the area(s) selected in the **Inclusions**, the button glows purple and the areas that the register contains a memory for are listed below the memory number. The currently selected memory register glows blue.

4. Select the recall mode for the memory. This is the mode that is stored in the memory, but can be overridden when the memory is recalled.

- **Program** — all elements are recalled as stored (default).
- **MemoryAI** — current on-air elements are unchanged and the transition area is configured to take the on-air elements of the memory on-air with the next transition.
- **Effects Dissolve** — on-air elements listed below are transitioned to the elements stored in the memory. The time it takes to go from the current elements to the elements in the memory is set in the **Effects Duration** field.
 - Matte colors (background, wash or borders)
 - Keyer settings like clip, gain, transparency
 - Mask position and size
 - Chroma key settings, except the background color
 - Pattern settings like size, position, aspect, border, softness, rotation
 - DVE settings like size, position, aspect, border, softness, cropping
 - Media-Store x/y position
 - Transition Progress

5. Set the memory attributes that you want recalled with the memory. Refer to [Memory Attributes](#) on page 48 for information on memory attributes.

Tip: All attributes are stored in the memory. Turning individual attributes on or off sets whether that item is included with the memory recall. Individual attributes can be turned on or off when the memory is recalled.

6. Click **Store** to store the memory.

Recalling Memories

When you recall a memory, the existing configuration of that ME is replaced with the settings stored in the memory.

Keep the following in mind:

Keep the following in mind when recalling memories:

- How a memory is recalled depends on the how the Memory Attributes are set.

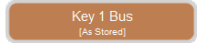
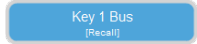
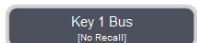
- Recalling a memory that includes a new Media-Store image to be loaded from a USB drive may result in the currently loaded image to be displayed for a few frames while the new image is loaded.
- Recalling a memory that includes a source assigned to a camera also recalls the shot stored in the memory for that camera if the **Camera** memory attribute is set to **Recall**. There is no delay in the memory recall so camera movement may be visible while the shot is recalled.
- You can override the video source stored in a memory by pressing and holding a source button and recalling the memory (Bus Hold). The held source button overrides the source that is recalled with the memory for that bus. The memory is not affected by a Bus Hold and will recall properly without the Bus Hold.
- Enabling Memory AI mode changes the way key elements are recalled. If a key is currently on-air, the element for that key is recalled in the next available off-air key. If there is no available off-air keys, the element is not recalled.

Related information

[Memory Attributes](#) on page 48

Memory Attribute Color Coding

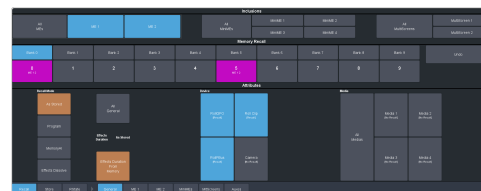
For a memory recall you can set individual attributes to be recalled or not, regardless of how they were stored. How the attribute is recalled is indicated by the color of the attribute button.

Color	Description
	As Stored — the memory attribute is recalled exactly as it was stored in the memory.
	Recall — the memory attribute is recalled with the memory, even if the attribute was not set to be stored with the memory.
	No Recall — the memory attribute is not recalled with the memory, even if the attribute was set to be stored with the memory.

To Recall a Memory

How to recall a memory using DashBoard.

- Click **Navigation Menu > Live Assist > Memory > Recall > General**.



- In the **Inclusions** area, select the ME, MiniME™, and MultiScreen that you want to recall the memory for.
- In the **Memory Recall** area, click the **Bank X** button for the bank that you want to recall from.



Important: Clicking a **X:Mem** button recalls that memory.

Tip: If a memory register contains a memory for the area(s) selected in the **Inclusions**, the button glows purple and the areas that the register contains a memory for are listed below the memory number.

- Select the recall mode for the memory.

Note: Recall attributes are color-coded for how they are going to be recalled. Refer to [Memory Attribute Color Coding](#) on page 47 for information on the color meaning.

- As Stored** — recall the memory with the same attributes that it was stored with.
- Program** — all elements are recalled as stored (default).
- MemoryAI** — current on-air elements are unchanged and the transition area is configured to take the on-air elements of the memory on-air with the next transition.
- Effects Dissolve** — recall the memory with an effects dissolve to the new memory elements. The time it takes to go from the current elements to the elements in the memory is set in the **Effects Duration** field or using the **Effect Duration From Memory**.

- Set the memory attributes that you want recalled with the memory. Refer to [Memory Attributes](#) on page 48 for information on memory attributes.

Note: All attributes are stored in the memory. Turning individual attributes on or off sets whether that item is included with the memory recall. Individual attributes can be turned on or off when the memory is recalled.

- Click the **X:Mem** button to recall the memory.

Tip: Click **Undo** to undo the last memory recall.

Memory Attributes

Memory Attributes allow you to specify what elements are recalled with a memory, as well as adding effects to memory recalls. These elements include the background/preset buses, keyer bus, Aux bus, and Media-Store selections, as well as keyer on-air status, and transition selections.

In addition to setting which sources to recall with the memory, effects such as performing an auto transition after the memory recall or running a custom control after the memory recall, can also be included.

Memory attributes can be set both when the memory is stored, and when it is recalled. This allows you to store a set of attributes with a memory and then recall it as stored, or override the attributes stored in the memory and apply different ones when the memory is recalled. A memory attribute does not need to be stored in the memory to be recalled.

Tip: It is recommended that if you are new to working with memories, use the memory store attributes to set how you want a memory to be recalled and set the recall attributes to be **Memory**.

To Set the Memory Attributes

Memory attributes can be set when the memory is stored or when it is recalled. This procedure sets the store attributes, but the information applies to both.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Live Assist > Memory > Store**.
2. Click **General** and set the attributes as required.



Note: For information on the recall mode (**Program/MemoryAI/Effects Dissolve**) refer to **To Store a Memory** on page 46.

- **Roll GPO** — set whether GPI outputs attached to sources are triggered when recalled.
- **Roll VTR** — set whether a play command is triggered when a source that is assigned to a video server is recalled.

- **Roll PBus** — set whether a PBus trigger function is sent when a source that is assigned to a PBus device is recalled.
- **Camera** — set whether camera shots are recalled.
- **MediaX** — set whether Media-Store items and settings for the selected channel are recalled.

3. Click **ME X**. The attributes for each ME are separate and must be set for each ME you want to include in the memory.



- **Trans Area** — set how the next transition type and parameters are recalled.
- **Next Trans** — set how the next transition area is recalled.
- **Run Auto** — set whether a transition is performed after the memory is recalled. (Not available during Effects Dissolve transitions.)
- **PGM Bus** — set how the sources selected on the program bus are recalled.
- **PST Bus** — set how the sources selected on the preset bus are recalled.
- **Shared Pattern** — set whether the settings for the shared Key Mask/Wash pattern generator is recalled.
- **Key X Bus** — set whether the source selected on the key bus is recalled.
- **Key X Active** — set whether the on-air status of the key is recalled.
- **Key X Type** — set whether the key type is recalled.
- **Key X Mask** — set whether mask settings for the key are recalled.

4. Click **MiniMEs**.



- **Trans Area** — set how the next transition type and parameters are recalled.
- **Next Trans** — set how the next transition area is recalled.
- **Run Auto** — set whether a transition is performed after the memory is recalled.

(Not available during Effects Dissolve transitions.)

- **PGM Bus** — set how the sources selected on the program bus are recalled.
- **PST Bus** — set how the sources selected on the preset bus are recalled.
- **Key X Bus** — set whether the source selected on the key bus is recalled.
- **Key X Active** — set whether the on-air status of the key is recalled.
- **Key X Type** — set whether the key type is recalled.
- **Key X Mask** — set whether mask settings for the key are recalled.

5. Click **MultiScreens**.



- **Trans Area** — set how the next transition type and parameters are recalled.
- **Next Trans** — set how the next transition area is recalled.
- **Run Auto** — set whether a transition is performed after the memory is recalled. (Not available during Effects Dissolve transitions.)
- **PGM Bus** — set how the sources selected on the program bus are recalled.
- **PST Bus** — set how the sources selected on the preset bus are recalled.
- **Key X Bus** — set whether the source selected on the key bus is recalled.
- **Key X Active** — set whether the on-air status of the key is recalled.
- **Key X Type** — set whether the key type is recalled.
- **Key X Mask** — set whether mask settings for the key are recalled.

6. Click **Auxes**.



- **Aux X** — set whether the source selected on the aux bus is recalled.

Deleting a Memory

You can delete the contents of a single memory. Only one memory can be cleared at a time, and you cannot undo the deletion.

*Tip: You can clear all memories from the switcher from the control panel. (Press **MENU** > **Reset** > **NEXT** > **NEXT**.)*

To Delete a Memory

Delete an individual memory or bank.

1. Click **Navigation Menu** > **Live Assist** > **Memory** > **Store**
2. In the **Memory Store** area, click the **Bank X** and **Mem X** button for the memory register that you want to delete.
3. Click **Delete Memory**.

Switcher Sets

The switcher stores configuration and operation data in a number of registers that contain the individual entries for items such as memories or personality settings. These registers can be stored as a single archive file, or as a register set that contains all the individual register of that type; all memories for example. These files are stored into Sets on USB drive. Different Sets can be created for different shows or applications, allowing you to quickly locate and recall the switcher configurations.

The switcher stores information in the following registers:

- **Memory** — contains all the memories for ME, MiniME™, and MultiScreen.
- **Custom Control** — contains all the custom control banks and macros.
- **Personality** — contains all the user interface settings, such as transition rates, that are stored under the **Personality** menu. Some personality settings are specific to the control panel and can be stored independently if you are working with a MultiPanel system.
- **Installation** — contains all the external device setup, and software settings for the switcher.

To Store a Set

Switcher Sets can only be stored to a USB drive. The USB drive must be present before you try to store the Set.

Note: If you are updating an older setup file, you must perform a Recall All followed by a Store All. This updates the setup files to the latest format. You can then make changes and store to individual registers if needed.

Tip: The switcher provides 10 empty sets by default. Additional sets can be created if you rename the sets on the USB from a separate computer.

1. Insert a USB drive into the USB Port on the frame. You must wait 5 seconds for the switcher to recognise the USB drive.
2. Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > System > Save Sets**.



3. Click a **Select Set** button for the set you want to store the switcher registers to.
4. Click a **Save** button to save that register to the selected set. If the button is shown in brown, that register already exists in the set and will be overwritten.
 - **All** — store all registers to the set.
 - **Memories** — store only the memory registers to the set.
 - **Customs** — store only the custom control registers to the set.
 - **Installation** — store only the installation registers to the set.
 - **Personality** — store only the personality registers to the set.

5. Click **Yes**.

The registers are stored to the set on the USB.

Tip: You can export the switcher set to your local computer in the **Export Set From Frame** area. Click **Export As...** and navigate to the folder where you want to store the file and enter a name. Click **Save** and then **Export**.

To Load a Set

Switcher Sets can only be loaded from a USB drive. The USB drive must be present before you try to load the settings.

Note: If you are updating an older setup file, you must perform a Recall All followed by a Store All. This updates the setup files to the latest format. You can then make changes and store to individual registers if needed.

1. Insert your USB drive into the USB Port on the frame. You must wait 5 seconds for the switcher to recognise the USB drive.
2. Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > System > Load Sets**.



Tip: You can import a switcher set from your local computer in the **Import Set to Frame** area. Click **Import From...** and navigate to the folder where the set is stored and click **Open**. Click **Import**.

3. Click an **Available Set** button to select the set you want to load the switcher register from. If there is only one set on the USB then these buttons will not be present.

4. Click a **Load** button to load that register. Only those registers that are present in the set are shown.
 - **All** — recall all registers from the set.
 - **Memories** — recall only the memory registers from the set.
 - **Customs** — recall only the custom control registers from the set.
 - **Installation** — recall only the installation registers from the set.
 - **Personality** — recall only the personality registers from the set.
5. Click **Yes**.

Exporting the Working Set for Ultra and Ultrix Carbonite

The working set can be exported to a format that is supported by Ultra and Ultrix Carbonite switchers. The working set is the current configuration of the switcher including all memories and custom controls that can be stored and recalled with a switcher set.

Keep the following in mind:

Keep the following in mind when exporting the working set for Ultra and Ultrix Carbonite:

- If you are exporting the working set, it must contain at least one memory register.
- Modified color schemes in Carbonite cannot be imported into Ultra or Ultrix Carbonite.
- If a video source used in a set (custom control, bus map, or GPI) does not exist in the switcher it is imported to, black will be selected instead.
- When a set is imported to Ultra or Ultrix Carbonite from Carbonite the ME numbering will be different. In Carbonite the highest numbered ME is the program ME. In Ultra and Ultrix Carbonite ME P/P is the program ME. This applies to all switcher setting except memories.
 - ME 1 -> ME P/P
 - ME 2 -> ME 1
 - ME 3 -> ME 2
- When a Memory is imported to Ultra or Ultrix Carbonite from Carbonite the ME numbering will be different. Only memories are mapping in this way.
 - ME 1 -> ME 2

- ME 2 -> ME 1
- ME 3 -> ME P/P
- When a set is imported to Ultra or Ultrix Carbonite from Carbonite some outputs (such as PGM, PRV, and CLN) are not available and must be re-assigned. For example, ME P/P replaces PGM.
- Custom controls imported to Ultra or Ultrix Carbonite from Carbonite cannot have memory recall events. These custom controls will not be imported.
- When exporting memories or custom controls that load Media-Store media items, the media item IDs and attributes must match between the switchers you are exporting from and importing to. This information is not included in the sets. If the media items do not match, the memories and custom controls may load the wrong media items or with the wrong attributes.
- When loading exported memories or custom controls that load Media-Store media items with an alpha, the alpha will be loaded twice. Carbonite uses one of the other Media-Store channels to load the alpha. Ultra or Ultrix Carbonite have dedicated alpha channels for each Media-Store channel. When the exported memory or custom control is loaded in Ultra or Ultrix Carbonite the alpha is loaded in the correct alpha channel as well as the channel that Carbonite was using for the alpha.

To Export the Working Set for Ultra and Ultrix Carbonite

The working set can be exported into a format that is readable by Ultra or Ultrix Carbonite switchers.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > System > Export Current Set**.



2. Click **Export As...** and navigate to the folder where you want to store the file and enter a name.
3. Click **Save**.

Media-Store

The MediaManager interface to the Media-Store allows you to load stills, animations, or audio files from the USB drive and make them available across all MEs. Two channels of Media-Store with alpha, or four channels without alpha, are provided.

Tip: The legacy web version of MediaManager can still be accessed by using the Google Chrome™ browser to navigate to the IP address of the frame. The **Disable Web Media Manager** setting must be **Off** (Click **Navigation Menu** > **Configuration** > **System** > **Global**) to access the legacy MediaManager. The frame must be restarted for the change to be applied.

Keep the following in mind:

Keep the following in mind when working with Media-Store:

- A still, animation, or audio can be loaded either by browsing the file system, or by entering the still number using the pattern buttons.
- You can clear a Media-Store channel by loading media number 000.
- If you are loading an Auto Key into a Media-Store channel, you must have another Media-Store channel associated with the current one to load the alpha into.
- An FTP connection using RossLinq can be created from an external device directly to a Media-Store channel on the switcher.
- If you delete a media item from the USB, you may have to load that media item into a Media-Store channel for the switcher to prompt you to delete the media item from the database.
- If you delete or rename a media item on the USB while it is still inserted into the switcher, you must attempt to load the old file to clear that entry from the database.
- The legacy web version of MediaManager still supports playlists.

Working With Media-Store Animations

Media-Store animations can be used for animated backgrounds, branding "bugs", or media transitions. You can set up an animation to loop, play automatically when taken on-air, play in reverse, or even play at different speeds.

Tip: You can play an animation manually from a control panel by selecting the source button for the Media-Store channel with the animation you want to play, and pressing **Run** on the 3-knob menu. The knob changes to **Stop** as the animation is playing.

Keep the following in mind:

Keep the following in mind when working with Media-Store animations:

- When you load an animation to an off-air Media-Store channel, or the animation goes off-air with a transition, the preview shows the cut point (**CutFr**) for that animation, and not the first frame of the video.
- You can manually cycle through frames by turning the **Run** knob while the animation is stopped.
- Double-pressing the **Run** knob stops playback and re-cues the animation to the first frame.
- You can shuttle forwards and backwards through the animation by turning the positioner clockwise or anti-clockwise when the animation is stopped, if your control panel has a positioner with a z-axis. Shuttle speed is increased and decreased by turning the positioner more or less in each direction.
- You can run or stop an animation by pressing the positioner button, if your control panel has a positioner with a button.

Working With Media-Store Audio

Audio can be added to the playout of a Media-Store channel either by loading the file directly, or by naming the audio file the same as the animation or still you want it to play out with. When you load the still or animation, the switcher will automatically load the audio file of the same name.

Keep the following in mind:

Keep the following in mind when working with Media-Store audio:

- Media-Store audio is available to the audio mixer and the AES outputs on the frame.
- Audio files must be 20-bit or 24-bit wav files at a 48kHz sample rate.
- Audio files must be in the same folder and have the same name as the still or animation they are to be associated with.
- An audio file does not need to be of the same length as the animation it is associated with.

- A still with audio or audio only have the Auto Play and Looping attributes. These apply to the audio payout.
- The looping time of an animation with audio is the length of the animation.
- A Media-Store channel can be loaded with Audio only.

Media-Store File Specifications

Media items can be in TGA, PNG, or JPG file formats. For animations, the files must be numbered to indicate the order they go in, and the name and the number must be separated with an underscore. For audio, 20-bit or 24-bit WAV files of the same name as the still or animation are used to associate audio with a still or animation.

For example, the following files are treated as a single animation named Anim that is 100 frames long:

- Anim_001.tga
- Anim_002.tga
- Anim_003.tga
- ...
- Anim_100.tga

Note: Media items must be created in the same color gamut and dynamic range that they are intended to be used in on the switcher. If a media item is created in one color space and the switcher is operating in another, the media item may not appear correctly.

Note: An animation must start with `_001` at the end of the name of the first frame.



Important: Files names cannot contain symbols such as `! @ # & * () / , ? ' "` and cannot start with an underscore (`_`).

Loading Stills or Animations

Stills or animations can be loaded into Media-Store channels from the USB by navigating to the file in MediaManager. MediaManager creates and maintains a database of the media items on the USB, as well as the setting for each media item and a thumbnail.

Note: The internal cache is used for sample images only and cannot be used to store user stills or animations.

To Load a Media Item

Media items are loaded from the USB drive into a Media-Store channel from MediaManager

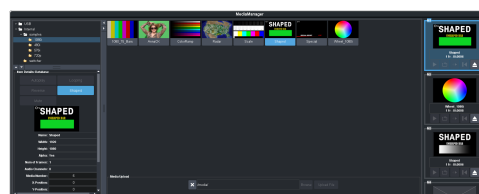
Note: Media items must be created in the same color gamut and dynamic range that they are intended to be used in on the switcher. If a media item is created in one color space and the switcher is operating in another, the media item may not appear correctly.

1. Insert your USB drive into the USB Port on the switcher. You must wait 5 seconds for the switcher to recognise the USB drive.

If the files on your USB are new, it takes about 2 seconds per file for the switcher to generate the thumbnail for the MediaManager. Once all the thumbnails are generated, they are displayed in the MediaManager window.

2. Click **Navigation Menu > Media > MediaManager**

Tip: The MediaManager can also be accessed from Live Assist (Click **Navigation Menu > Live Assist > Media > MediaManager**). The Live Assist version follows Media-Store source selections on the panel.



3. Navigate to the folder containing the media item you want to load into a Media-Store channel.

Note: The first time you navigate to a folder it may take a few moments for the Media-Store to scan the files and build the database entries.

Tip: You can upload a media item from your computer to the selected folder on the USB. In the **Still Upload** area click **Browse** and navigate to the media item you want to upload to the USB. Click **Open** and then **Upload File**.

All the media items in that folder are shown in the center area of the page.

4. Drag the media item onto the Media-Store channel you want to load it in.

Tip: The film-strip symbol (🎞️) indicates that the media item is an animation, the key symbol (🔑) indicates that the media item has an alpha, and the speaker symbol (🔊) indicates that the media item has audio associated with it, or is audio only.

MediaManager Channel Control

Once a media item is loaded into a channel you can control the payout for the media item from MediaManager.

Note: Playlists are not supported by MediaManager in DashBoard at this time.



Tip: The background of the channel areas tallies the on-air status of the Media-Store channel. Red for on-air and green for on-preview.

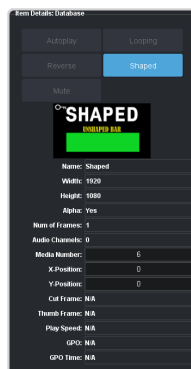
The label below the thumbnail of the media item shows the name of the file, the number of frames in the animation, and the media ID. In this example, the name of the media item is **Lobster**, it is **5** frames long, it is located on the USB (**U1**) and has a media ID of **001**.

The controls below the name allow you to set how the animation plays out as well as eject the current media item.

- **Play** — play the animation.
- **Loop** — set the animation to start playing again from the beginning when it reaches the last frame.
- **Play Direction** — set the animation to play in the forward or reverse direction.
- **Re-cue** — re-cue the animation to the first playout frame.
- **Eject** — eject the current media item from the channel.

Media-Store Attributes

Attributes are applied to the media item in the database and in each Media-Store channel. Where the attributes are being applied is shown in the upper left corner of the area. If you adjust the attributes of the media item in one channel, these settings are not applied back to the database or to other channel if the same media item is loaded into more than one channel.



Tip: At the top of the **Item Details** frame the title indicates if the information shown applies to the media item loaded into the media channel (**MX**), or is from the media item in the database (**Database**).

Buttons:

- **Autoplay** — play the animation automatically when the Media-Store channel is taken on-air.
- **Reverse** — set the animation to play in the forward or reverse direction.
- **Mute** — mute the audio associated with the media item.
- **Looping** — set the animation to start playing again from the beginning when it reaches the last frame.
- **Shaped** — set the alpha to be shaped, or unshaped when not selected.

Fields:

- **Name** — the name of the media item as taken from the file name.
- **Width** — the width of the media item raster.
- **Height** — the height of the media item raster.
- **Alpha** — shows whether there is an associated alpha with the media item.
- **Number of Frames** — the number of frames in the animation.
- **Audio Channels** — the number of audio channels in the associated audio.
- **Media Number** — the media number of the media item.
- **X-Position** — set the horizontal position of the media item.
- **Y-Position** — set the vertical position of the media item.
- **Cut Frame** — set the frame of the animation when used as part of a MediaWipe.
- **Thumb Frame** — set the frame of the animation that is used for the thumbnail.
- **Play Speed** — set the playout speed for the animation.
- **GPO** — set the GPI output that you want to trigger by a media transition.
- **GPO Time** — set the time, in frames, from the start of the media transition that the GPI output is triggered.

Media-Store Capture

Still images can be captured from any input BNC, as well as the program, preview, and clean feed from any ME.

To Capture a Still From the Panel



Important: A control panel is required to perform this procedure. If you do not have access to a physical control panel, the SoftPanel can be used. The position of items on the menus on the SoftPanel may not match those of a physical panel.

1. Insert your USB drive into the USB Port on the switcher. You must wait 5 seconds for the switcher to recognise the USB drive.
2. Press the source button for the Media-Store channel that you want to capture a still into.
3. Press the **Capt** knob.
4. Press the **P/B** or **E/E** knob to select the mode you want the Media-Store in.
 - **E/E** — electronic-to-electronic, or record, mode allows you to record a still
 - **P/B** — playback mode allows you to review your still
5. Use the **P/B** or **E/E** knob to select the video source that you want to perform the capture of.
6. Press **NEXT**.
7. Use the **Alpha** knob to select whether you want to capture the alpha signal (**Yes**) or not (**No**). You must have an input BNC selected as the capture source to capture the alpha.
8. Press **NEXT**.
9. Use the **Capt** knob to select a number for the still you want to capture.
10. Press the **Capt** knob to perform the capture. The new media item is stored and the media number is increased by one.

Custom Controls

Once programmed, a custom control (CC) can be played back by pressing a button. The custom control can be as simple as triggering an output GPI pulse, or as complex as recalling a specific memory register on an ME, performing a switcher transition, and selecting a group of keys.

You can record, edit, and run custom controls from the Custom Control node in DashBoard.

Refer to [Custom Control Events](#) on page 110 for information on available events.

Recording/Editing Custom Controls

When you create a custom control, you record a series of events and special functions, that are played back when you run the custom control. The process for creating a new cc and editing an existing one are the same, except when editing you have the option to insert events at different points in the existing cc.

Tip: Remember that some functions take time to perform and a pause should be added after the function to ensure that the command is completed before moving on to the next command.

Almost any action or setting can be stored in a custom control, with the following exceptions:

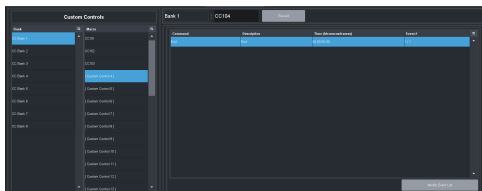
- Diagnostic Functions
- Confirmation Dialogs
- Panel-Specific Functions

Note: It is recommended that you use a control panel for recording custom controls.

To Record a Custom Control

A basic custom control records a series of events that are played out in the same order they are recorded.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Custom Control > Editor**.



2. Click a **Bank** button to select the bank that the custom control you want to record will be stored on.

3. Click a **Macro** button to select the custom control that you want to record to. If the custom control already has a macro recorded, the name of the custom control is shown in the list.
4. Click **Record**.

Tip: The switcher can be set so that each command is automatically separated from the previous command by a pause equal to the real-time delay between the you entering commands. Press **CC/UP > NEXT > NEXT** and use the **CCPause** knob to select whether pauses are added automatically (**Record**) or no pauses are added (**Manual**).

The **CC/UP** button on the control panel, as well as the button assigned to the CC on the bus, flash red when the CC is recording.

5. Insert the events you want to record. Events can be entered from the menu or from actions directly on the control panel. Each custom control can have a maximum of 998 events, plus the End event.

Note: When the switcher runs a custom control, it attempts to execute each event in the custom control as quickly as possible. If an event takes time to complete, the event may not be complete before the switcher attempts to execute the next event. For example, if your custom control has a memory recall followed by a transition, a pause should be added between the memory recall and the transition to ensure that the memory is fully recalled before the transition is performed. The same applies if you want to add events after a transition.

6. Click **Stop Recording** to finish recording.

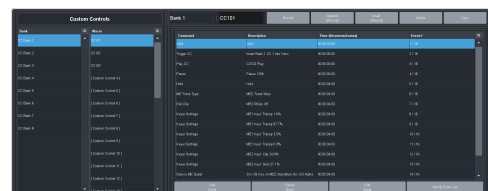
Tip: Click **Cancel** if you do not want to store your events to the custom control.

To Edit a Custom Control

When editing a custom control, you can delete and insert events at any point in the custom control, or append events to the end.

Tip: When editing a custom control, press **Run Event** to run the currently selected event. This can help you diagnose problems in a custom control.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Custom Control > Editor**.



2. Click **Bank X** to select the bank that the custom control you want to edit is on.
3. Click the custom control that you want to edit.
4. Click the event that you want to edit or insert an event before.
Refer to [Custom Control Events](#) on page 110 for information on available events.
5. Edit the custom control or event.
 - **Append (Record)** — start inserting events to the end of the custom control
 - **Append** — insert the current event at the end of the custom control
 - **Copy** — copy the entire custom control
 - **Delete** — delete the entire custom control
 - **Delete Event** — delete the currently selected event
 - **Edit Event** — edit the parameters of the currently selected event
 - **Insert (Record)** — start insert events after the currently selected event
 - **Insert** — insert the current event after the currently selected event
 - **Record** — start recording a new custom control over the existing one
 - **Run Event** — run the currently selected event

Running a Custom Control

Once a custom control has been programmed, you can run that custom control by pressing the button that the custom control was recorded to.

Keep the following in mind:

Keep the following in mind when running custom controls:

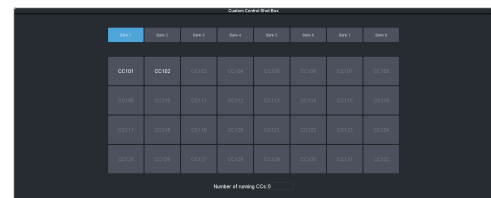
- A custom control will continue to run until it reaches a hold event, is stopped by another custom control, you edit a custom control, or the custom control reaches the end.
- When a custom control is running, the button on the custom control bus is red.
- When a custom control is held (at a Hold event), the button on the custom control bus flashes white.
- You can run multiple custom controls at the same time. The number of running custom controls is shown on the display when in custom control mode.

- You can stop a running custom control by pressing the red custom control button on the custom control bank.
- You can stop all running custom controls by selecting a custom control with no events recorded to it.
- A maximum of 128 custom controls can be run at the same time.

To Run a Custom Control

Once a custom control has been recorded, you can run that custom control at any time.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Custom Control > Shot Box**.



Tip: You can also run a custom control directly from the control panel.

Tip: The number of custom controls that are currently running is shown at the bottom of the page.

2. Click **Bank X** to select the bank that the custom control you want to run is on.
3. Click a custom control button to run that specific custom control.
The custom control starts to play immediately.

Naming Custom Controls

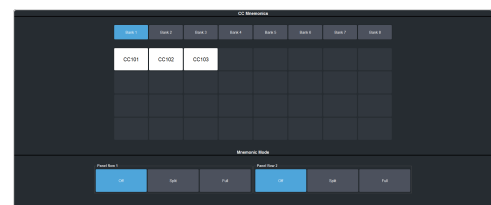
Each custom control can be given a unique name and mnemonic color. The name and color is shown on the custom control button.

To Name a Custom Control

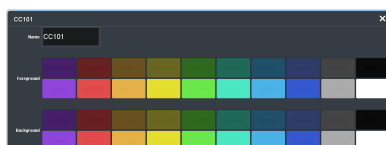
The procedure to name or rename a custom control is the same.

Tip: You can also name a custom control from the **Editor** page.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Custom Control > TouchDrive Mnemonics**.



2. Click **Bank X** to select the bank that the custom control you want to name is on.
3. Select how you want the mnemonics on each panel row to display the mnemonics for custom controls.
 - **Off** — the mnemonics don't change when the row is assigned to a custom control bank.
 - **Split** — the mnemonics are split (top to cc name and bottom to bus sources) when the row is assigned to a custom control bank.
 - **Full** — the mnemonics are show only the names of the custom controls when the row is assigned to a custom control bank.
4. Click the custom control that you want to name.



Setting	Description
Name	Enter a new name for the selected custom control.
Text	Click a Foreground button to select the color you want to apply to the text on the mnemonic.
Background	Click a Background button to select the color you want to apply to the background on the mnemonic.

Deleting Custom Controls

Any custom control on the switcher can be deleted to remove unused customs to free up space for new custom controls.

To Delete a Custom Control

Deleting a custom control from the switcher.

There is no undo for this delete function.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Custom Control > Editor**.
2. Click **Bank X** to select the bank that the custom control you want to delete is on.
3. Click the custom control button that you want to delete.
4. Click **Delete**.
5. Click **Delete** to delete the custom control.

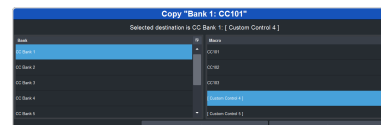
Copying and Pasting Custom Controls

The contents, or events, of a custom control can be copied from one custom control and pasted to another. Along with the events, the name and mnemonic settings are also copied.

To Copy and Paste a Custom Control

Copy the contents of a custom control from one button to another.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Custom Control > Editor**.
2. Click **Bank X** to select the bank that the custom control you want to copy is on.
3. Click the custom control that you want to copy.
4. Click **Copy**.
5. Select the custom control that you want to paste into.



6. Click **Copy**.

Network Connections

The switcher requires a network connection for the DashBoard interface as well as any control panel you want to use.

DashBoard can be run on a remote computer, or from the TouchDrive control panel. The Carbonite Black control panels still require a separate DashBoard computer.

Note: Refer to the documentation that came with DashBoard or your control panel for setup information.

The switcher uses the following network ports:

- **FTP** — 21
- **SSH** — 22
- **DashBoard** — 5253
- **SLP** — 427
- **Web Server** — 80
- **RossTalk** — 7788

Network Setup

The frame comes from the factory set with a static IP address (192.168.0.123) but can be set to use DHCP to automatically obtain an IP address or to a different static IP address. You must connect to the frame from DashBoard to set a different static IP address.

Note: If you use a DHCP server, it must be set to always give the frame the same IP address. DashBoard and the control panel need a fixed IP address to connect to.

Tip: If you do not know the IP address of the frame, you can set DIP switch on the frame to set the IP address to 192.168.0.123. The frame must be re-started for the new IP address to be applied. Remember to set the DIP switch back once you have set the new IP address.

The legacy web-based MediaManager is accessed from a browser directed to the IP address of the switcher frame. You can disable this functionality by turning **Disable Web Media Manager** to **On** (Click **Navigation Menu** > **Configuration** > **System** > **Global**). This does not change the functionality if the MediaManager in DashBoard. The frame must be restarted for the change to be applied.

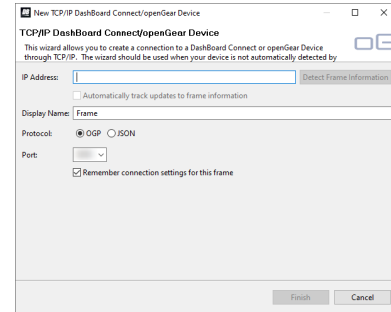
To Connect DashBoard to the Frame

DashBoard connects to the frame as the main panel, or as a satellite panel. Connecting as a main or satellite panel is selected by the port used to connect to on the frame. All DashBoard connections and physical panels that connect on the same port mirror each other.

Note: DashBoard must be running on a computer/panel on the same subnet as the frame to connect.

You need the IP address of the frame to connect to it from DashBoard.

1. Click **File** > **New** > **TCP/IP DashBoard Connect or openGear Device**.



2. In the **IP Address** field, enter the IP address of the frame. The default IP address is 192.168.0.123.
3. In the **Display Name** field, enter the name you want to use to identify the frame in DashBoard. This should be a unique name for the frame you are setting up.
4. Select **OGP**.
5. In the **Port** field, enter the port you want to connect to on the frame. The port you connect to assigns the relationship the DashBoard connection has to the frame.

Tip: Multiple DashBoard connections can use the same port, but they will mirror each other. For example, you can connect a control panel and a separate DashBoard computer to the Main Panel port to give control from the panel and DashBoard.

- **Main Panel** — 5253
- **Satellite 1** — 5255
- **Satellite 2** — 5256
- **Satellite 3/SoftPanel** — 5257

Tip: Refer to [MultiPanel](#) on page 99 for information on setting up a MultiPanel system.

6. Click **Finish**.
The frame appears in the **Tree View**.

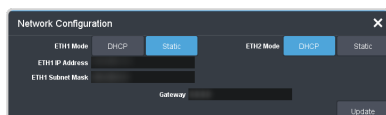
To Change the IP Address

Change the IP address of the frame from DashBoard.

1. Click **Navigation Menu** > **Configuration** > **Network**.



2. Enter a name in the **Switcher Name** field. This is the name that appears in the tree view in DashBoard.
3. Click **Edit**.



4. Click a **Mode** button to use DHCP (**DHCP**), or a static IP address (**Static**) for the ethernet port you are using.
5. For a static IP address, enter the IP address (**IP Address**), subnet mask (**Subnet Mask**), and gateway (**Gateway**) you want to use.
6. Click **Update**.

FTP Connection

You can create a File Transfer Protocol (FTP) connection from a computer to your switcher. You can use the FTP connection to copy still images and animations to and from your switcher as well as copy Edit Decision List (EDL) files from your switcher.

The procedure for creating an FTP connection from a computer varies between operating systems and client software. Consult with the documentation that came with your computer for assistance with creating an FTP connection.

Tip: The FTP connection can be used to copy media items onto the USB that is installed in the switcher.

To Create an FTP Connection

This procedure applies to Microsoft® Windows XP® Professional and Windows® 7.

1. On your computer launch Windows Explorer.
2. In the address bar, type `ftp://IP Address of your switcher`. You are prompted for a username and password.
3. Type the user name for the application your are creating an FTP connection for. Each application has specific requirements. The

switcher will set these requirements automatically based on the username.

- **xpression** – used when creating a connection from a Ross® XPression Motion Graphics System directly to the Media-Store channels on the switcher, as well as any USB drive installed in the switcher
- **liveedl** – used to create a connection to the LiveEDL folder on the switcher to download an edit decision list file from the switcher
- **user** – used to create a connection to the general storage folders on the switcher, as well as any USB drive installed in the switcher

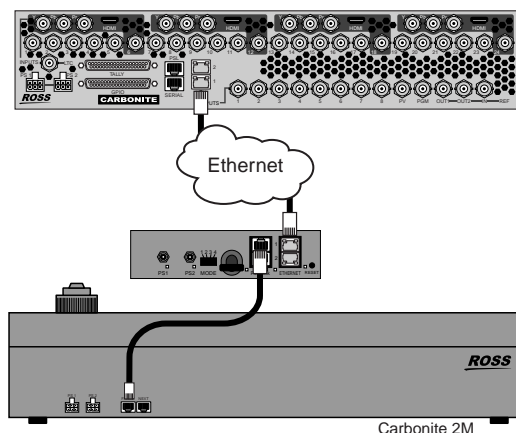
4. Enter the password **password**.

CarboNET

The CarboNET PMC translator allows you to connect the control panel to the frame over ethernet. The control panel connects to the CarboNET over the standard serial link and then the CarboNET connects to the frame over ethernet.

Note: The CarboNET requires the frame to have a fixed IP address so that it can connect to the frame. The frame must either be set to a static IP address, or your DHCP server must be set to always give the frame the same IP address.

CarboNET Cabling



Tip: While the CarboNET is waiting to connect to the frame, the current network connection information for the CarboNET that the control panel is connected to is shown on the menu display of the control panel. This includes DHCP vs Static, IP address, subnet mask, MAC address, and gateway.

CarboNET Network Settings

By default, the CarboNET uses DHCP to automatically obtain an IP address. You can manually set a static IP address, network mask, and default gateway if your network does not have a DHCP server or if you need to set a static IP.

The CarboNET is automatically discovered in DashBoard and appears as **CarbonitePanel** followed by the MAC address of that particular CarboNET.

To Configure the Network Setting

Change the network setting of a Carbonite Black control panel.

1. Double-click on the **ePCH** node and click on the **Ethernet** tab.

Note: The **Current DIP Switch** field shows the state of the DIP1 and DIP2 switches on the control panel. Some settings do not allow you to change the IP settings from DashBoard.

2. Click a **Method** button to select whether to use a static IP address (**Static**), or obtain an IP address (**DHCP**).
3. For a static IP address, enter the IP address (**IP Address**), subnet mask (**Subnet Mask**), and gateway (**Default Gateway**) you want to use.
4. In the **Carbonite IP Address** field, enter the IP address of the frame you are connecting to.
5. Click a **Panel ID** button to select whether you want to assign the panel as the main panel (**Main**), or one of the satellite panels (**Sat. 1** or **Sat. 2**). The panel id sets what permissions the control panel has to the resources on the frame.
6. Click **Apply Changes**.

To Assign a Custom Name

The name appears in the tree view in DashBoard and allows you to easily identify your particular device.

1. Double-click on the **ePCH** node and click on the **Panel Name, Permissions** tab.
2. In the **Panel Name** field, enter the new name.

DIP Switches

The up position for the DIP switch is OFF.

DIP1	DIP2	DIP3	DIP4	Function
OFF	OFF			User IP Settings
OFF	ON			Force DHCP IP
ON	OFF			Force Static IP (192.168.0.129)
ON	ON			reserved
		OFF		reserved
		ON		reserved
			OFF	Default Boot
			ON	Boot from memory card

Note: When you force the static IP, the IP address that the control panel expects to find the frame is also set (192.168.0.123).

Troubleshooting

Keep the following in mind if you are having trouble connecting the panel to the frame through the CarboNET:

- Check the serial connection (PMC) between the CarboNET and the panel. The cable to the control panel must be CAT5e, or higher, Shielded Twisted Pair to a maximum of 200m.
- If the panel is properly connected to the CarboNET, the ethernet settings of the CarboNET are shown on the menu display of the control panel.
- Verify the ethernet settings being displayed on the panel with those set in DashBoard for the CarboNET.
- Verify the IP address for the frame that the CarboNET should be connecting to. Are they both on the same network?

Video Reference

The flexible reference system in the switcher allows you to use an Interlaced video format as the reference to operate the switcher in a video format of the same frequency.

Choosing a progressive video format as a reference limits you to operating the switcher only in that same video format and frequency. For example, if you have a 1080i 59.94Hz input reference you can operate the switcher in 720p 59.94Hz, but not 1080i 50Hz. However, if you have a 720p 59.94Hz input reference, you can only operate the switcher in 720p 59.94Hz.

Supported Reference Formats

The switcher supports a number of reference modes for both internal and external reference signals. References to 1080p 59.94Hz (A) and 1080p 50Hz (A) refer to 1080p Level A only.

Switcher Format	Required Reference
SD Formats	
480i/480i 16:9	480i
	1080i 59.94Hz
576i/576i 16:9	576i
	1080i 50Hz
HD Formats	
720p 50Hz	576i
	720p 50Hz
	1080i 50Hz
720p 59.94Hz	480i
	720p 59.94Hz
	1080i 59.94Hz
1080i 50Hz	576i
	1080i 50Hz
1080i 59.94Hz	480i
	1080i 59.94Hz
1080pSF 23.98Hz	1080pSF 23.98Hz
1080pSF 25Hz	576i
	1080i 50Hz
	1080pSF 25Hz
1080pSF 29.97Hz	480i
	1080i 59.94Hz
	1080pSF 29.97Hz

Switcher Format	Required Reference
1080p 25Hz	576i
	1080i 50Hz
	1080p 25Hz
1080p 29.97Hz	480i
	1080i 59.94Hz
1080p 50Hz	576i
	720p 50Hz
	1080i 50Hz
	1080p 25Hz
1080p 59.94Hz	480i
	720p 59.94Hz
	1080i 59.94Hz

The switcher allows you to use any interlaced video format to operate the switcher in any format of the same frequency; however, the use of 480i or 576i (Composite Sync) reference signals for High Definition (720p, 1080i, or 1080p) video modes is not recommended.

The use of composite sync reference formats is recommended for Standard Definition video modes only, and provides stable outputs with jitter performance in compliance with SMPTE-259M specifications.

Reference and Video Mode Setup

The switcher supports both internal and external references. An external reference is provided by an external device to the switcher through the **REF IN** BNC on the frame. An internal reference is generated by the switcher and can be fed out to other devices.

The switcher automatically detects the reference signal and only shows the video modes that you can operate the switcher in that are supported for that reference format.

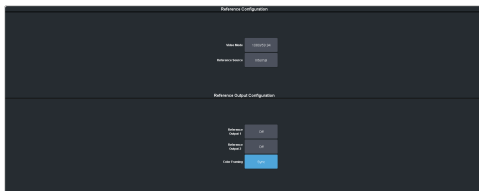
To Set a Video Mode

The Vid Mode is the video format that the switcher is operating in.

If you are using an external reference, ensure that a proper reference is connected to the **REF IN** input BNC on the frame.

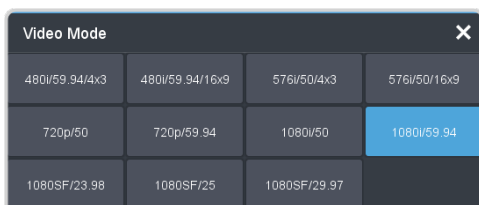
Note: You must use an interlaced reference source to have the switcher operate in an interlaced reference format if you are using an external reference.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > Reference.**



2. Click the **Video Mode** button and select the video format you want to use.

The available video modes depends on the reference format coming into the switcher.



3. Click the **Reference Source** button and select an **Internal** or **External** reference source.

Switching Field

The switching field is the field in an interlaced video format that the switcher uses to transition from one video source to another. An interlaced video format is made up of two fields, field 1 (odd lines) and field 2 (even lines).

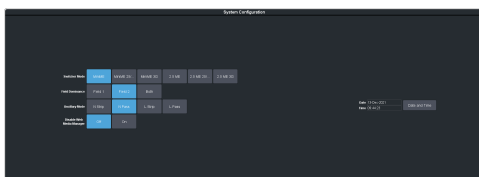
Note: If you are running in a progressive video format, selecting an even or odd fields will cause the switcher to only allow transitions on every second frame.

To Set the Switching Field

Set the field that transitions are performed on.

Note: If you are using a Frame Sync or Format Conversion (FSFC), transitions are locked to Field 1.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > System > Global.**



2. Click a **Field Dominance** button to select which field video transitions occur on.
 - **Field 1** — transitions occur on the odd field

- **Field 2** — transitions occur on the even field
- **Both** — transitions occur on the current field, either even or odd

Switcher Modes

The switcher mode allows you to set the features and resources that you want to have available on your switcher. Some feature and resources are not compatible with all switcher modes.

The switcher mode allows you to set the features and resources that you want to have available on your switcher. Some feature and resources are not compatible with all switcher modes.

Table 2: Carbonite/Carbonite eXtreme Switcher Mode Features

Features	MiniME FSFC	MiniME	MiniME 25/29.97	MiniME 3G	2.5 ME	2.5 ME 25/29.97	2.5 ME 3G
DVEs	4	8	8	4	8	8	4
Float FSFCs	6*	0	0	0	0	0	0
2.5 MEs	No	No	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
MiniME™	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No	No
Video Modes	SD, HD	SD, HD	1080p 29.97, 1080p 25	3G	SD, HD	1080p 29.97, 1080p 25	3G
Source Formats	SD, HD	SD, HD	1080p 29.97, 1080p 59.94, 1080p 25, 1080p 50	1080i, 3G	SD, HD	1080p 29.97, 1080p 59.94, 1080p 25, 1080p 50	1080i, 3G
ViewControl	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	No
MultiViewer Boxes	16	16	16	10	16	16	10

Note: * In the MiniME FSFC mode, the switcher cannot frame sync a pSF video format on input BNC 1. All other inputs work correctly.

Keep the following in mind:

Keep the following in mind when changing switcher modes:

- The Standard mode only supports the Carbonite and Carbonite eXtreme frames.
- When switching to a mode that only supports 10 boxes in the MultiViewer the unsupported layouts are changed to the H244 layout.
- In a 3G mode, the MultiViewer output is fixed to outputs 7 and 8 and the 1080i video format.
- In a 3G mode, the Carbonite and Carbonite eXtreme switchers only accept synchronized 1080p inputs.
- In a 3G, 1080p 25/29.97Hz, or 2.5 ME mode, the Carbonite and Carbonite eXtreme switchers do not support the use of a color background as a source on a DVE or chroma key.

- In a 1080p 25/29.97Hz mode, 1080p 29.97Hz and 1080p 25Hz are the only available video modes.

To Set the Switcher Mode

Note: Not all switcher support all modes. A restart is required to put the switcher into the new mode.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > System.**



2. Click the **Switcher Mode** button for the mode you want the switcher to operate in.
 - **MiniME FSFC** — floating FSFCs on the Carbonite and Carbonite eXtreme frames.
 - **MiniME** — MiniME™ with standard SD and HD video formats.
 - **MiniME 25/29.97** — MiniME™ with the 1080p 29.97Hz or 1080p 25Hz video format.
 - **MiniME 3G** — MiniME™ with 3G video formats, not including 1080p 29.97Hz or 1080p 25Hz.
 - **2.5 ME** — 2.5 ME with standard SD and HD video formats.
 - **2.5 ME 25/29.97** — 2.5 ME with the 1080p 29.97Hz or 1080p 25Hz video format.
 - **2.5 ME 3G** — 2.5 ME with 3G video formats, not including 1080p 29.97Hz or 1080p 25Hz.

Router Inputs and Outputs

Video signals can either pass directly from an input BNC on the router to an output BNC on the router, bypassing the video processing of the switcher subsystem, or can pass through the switcher subsystem. Only video signals passing through the switcher can be used for transitions or keying.

The Switchboard node in the DashBoard control system allows you to assign video sources to the input and output BNCs. The router subsystem views the switcher inputs as outputs and the switcher outputs as inputs. These inputs and outputs must be mapped to BNCs on the router to allow video sources in and out of the switcher. The router subsystem assigns a different range of inputs and outputs to each switcher subsystem.

Note: You cannot route an output from one switcher subsystem to the input of the other switcher subsystem. Each switcher subsystem is an independent unit.

	Switcher A	Switcher B
Router Outputs to Switcher	145-168	169-192
Router Inputs from Switcher	145-154	155-164

Note: Video signals that are routed through the switcher subsystem are delayed versus those that are routed directly from an input BNC to an output BNC.

Switcher Inputs from the Router

Video inputs to the switcher must be assigned to outputs (**Switcher Input 1-24**) on the router.

To Assign a Router Input to a Switcher Input

1. Open the Switchboard node in the DashBoard control system for your frame.
2. In the **Output** column, select the switcher input (**Switcher A/B Input 1-24**) that you want to assign a router input to.
3. In the **Input** column, select the source from the router (**In 1-In 144**) that you want to assign to the selected switcher input.

Switcher Outputs to the Router

Video outputs from the switcher must be assigned to outputs on the router.

To Assign a Switcher Output to a Router Output

1. Open the Switchboard node in the DashBoard control system for your frame.
2. In the **Output** column, select the output of the router that you want to assign an output of the switcher to.
3. In the **Input** column, select the output from the switcher (switcher A or switcher B) that you want to assign to a router output.
 - **Switcher A/B Preview** — main preview output of the switcher
 - **Switcher A/B Program** — main program output of the switcher
 - **Switcher A/B Output 1-8** — video outputs from the switcher
 - **In1-In144** — router inputs (bypass switcher)

Input Cable Equalization

Cable equalization allows the switcher to adjust to the cable length and signal data rate of the input video to minimize jitter.

To Set Up Input Cable Equalization

1. In DashBoard, select the Carbonite eXtreme node under the NK-IPS node that the frame is connected to.
2. Click the **Card Details** tab.
3. Click on the input card slot that you want to set up cable equalization on. Each card supports eight input BNCs on the back of the frame.

The current status of the card in the selected slot is shown to the right of the illustration of the frame. If a video signal is present on a BNC, the **Signal Present** indicator for that BNC shows green.

4. Select the **EQ Enable** box for each BNC that you want to enable cable equalization for.
5. Click **Send Configuration**.
6. On the **Send Config to NK Device** dialog box, select the device that you want to send the new configuration to.
7. Click **Send**.

Video Inputs

External video sources come into the switcher through the input BNCs, and internal sources are generated internally from the switcher. Depending on how you want to use these video sources, or where they come from, you may want the switcher to pair them together, or associate an external device with them. Pairing two video sources together is usually used for an auto select key where an external device, such as a character generator, outputs both a key video and key alpha. Associating a video source with an external device allows special control over that device to become active when you select the source on a bus.

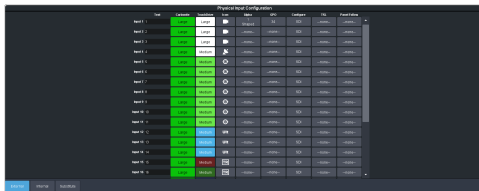
Video Input Setup

Video inputs are separated into external sources and internal sources. The external sources are the video inputs coming in on the BNC and the internal sources are generated internally from re-entries or follows, or from media generators.

To Set up an External Video Input

External sources come into the switcher from other devices, such as cameras, video servers, or character generators.

Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > Inputs >**



The physical inputs are listed along the side and the various settings are listed across the top. Click the setting button for the source you want to set up to view the available settings.

Setting	Description
Text	Apply a custom name to the source. Enter a new name for each input you want to identify differently. The name is used to identify the input on the panel mnemonics and well as on menus. If TSL id is associated with the input, the switcher will use the router mnemonic name over the internal one.

Setting	Description
Carbonite	Set up the mnemonic appearance of the source for the control panel you are using. Refer to your control panel documentation for more information on setting up mnemonics.
TouchDrive	
Icon	
Alpha	Link an alpha video feed to the video. If the input is the video or fill for an auto key, click the Alpha button and select the video source you want to use as the alpha. Refer to To Set Up an Auto Key Association on page 69 for information on setting up an auto key.
GPO	Assign a GPI output to a video input. The GPI output is triggered with or before the source is taken on-air, depending on the Predelay setting. The GPI output can be used to trigger a video server to play before taking the server on-air. Refer to GPI Device Control on page 69 for information on assigning a GPI output to a video source.
Configure	Assign an FSFC or Delay to the input. Refer to Frame Sync and Format Conversion on page 81 for information on FSFC setup.
TSL	Assign a TSL id to the input and set the tally state. Refer to To Assign a TSL ID to a Video Input on page 67 for information on assigning a TSL id to an input.
Panel Follow	Select one of the custom panels to be shown on Live Assist when the source is selected. This can be used to have the DashBoard page for a camera control unit displayed when the camera source is selected. Refer to Custom Page Auto Follow on page 70 for information on setting up custom panels.

To Set up an Internal Video Input

Internal sources are generated inside the switcher, such as matte backgrounds, Media -Store channels, and ME re-entries.

Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > Inputs > Internal**



The internal sources are listed along the side and the various settings are listed across the top. Click the setting button for the source you want to set up to view the available settings.

Setting	Description
Text	Apply a custom name to the source. Enter a new name for each input you want to identify differently. The name is used to identify the input on the panel mnemonics and well as on menus.
Carbonite	Set up the mnemonic appearance of the source for the control panel you are using. Refer to your control panel documentation for more information on setting up mnemonics.
TouchDrive	
Icon	
Alpha	Link an alpha video signal to the video. The Media-Store channels have dedicated alpha channels that cannot be changed. Refer to To Set Up an Auto Key Association on page 69 for information on setting up an auto key.
GPO	Assign a GPI output to a video input. The GPI output is triggered with or before the source is taken on-air, depending on the Predelay setting. The GPI output can be used to trigger a video server to play before taking the server on-air. Refer to GPI Device Control on page 69 for information on assigning a GPI output to a video source.
Panel Follow	Select one of the custom panels to be shown on Live Assist when the source is selected. The pages for MediaManager are assigned to the Media-Store sources. Refer to Custom Page Auto Follow on page 70 for information on setting up custom panels.

Source Names

Each video source in the switcher can be given a unique name. These names can be customized for how they appear on the mnemonics by adjusting the size or the font and the background color.

Note: If a TSL ID is assigned to a source, the switcher overwrites the source name on the MultiViewer and mnemonics with the TSL name. If there is no TSL name, or it has not been received yet, the source name is blank. For the labels on the MultiViewer, a combination of the TSL name and switcher source name are used. The new TSL name is passed from the switcher to any downstream TSL devices.

To Set Up a Source Name

Source names appear on mnemonics, menus, and on the MultiViewer.

Note: Source names are restricted to eight characters in length.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > Inputs >** if you are setting up a physical input, or **Internal** if you are setting up an internal input.

2. Enter a new name in the **Text** field for the video input that you want to name.

To Save and Upload a Router Mnemonic Names File

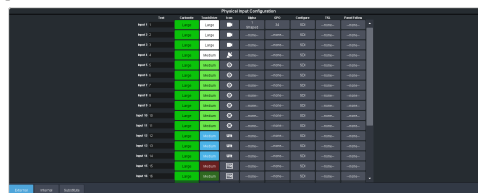
1. Open the Switchboard node for your IPS in DashBoard.
2. Click the **Configure Switchboard** button in the upper-right corner of the window.
3. Click the **Save** button and select the location where you want to store the .nks file.
4. Click **Save**.
5. Click the **Router Mnemonics** tab on the Configuration node in DashBoard for the switcher.
6. Click **Upload** and locate the .nks file that you just saved.
7. Click **OK** and **Continue** to upload the file.

To Assign a TSL ID to a Video Input

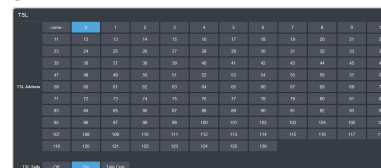
Pass router mnemonic names to the switcher with TSL ID data.

The switcher accepts incoming TSL 3.1 data on TCP port 5727.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > Inputs >**



2. Click the **TSL** button for the input you want to assign a TSL ID to.



3. Click TSL ID number that you want to assign to the selected input BNC.
4. Click the **TSL Tally** button and select how the sources are tallied and which mnemonic name is use.
 - **Off** — TSL tally information for the selected ID is ignored. TSL mnemonic source names are used.

- **On** — source tallied on the MultiViewer based on the TSL input. TSL mnemonic source names are used.
- **Tally Only** — source tallied on the MultiViewer based on the TSL input. TSL mnemonic source names are not used.

Note: If a TSL ID is assigned to a source, the switcher overwrites the source name on the MultiViewer and mnemonics with the TSL name. If there is no TSL name, or it has not been received yet, the source name is blank. For the labels on the MultiViewer, a combination of the TSL name and switcher source name are used. The new TSL name is passed from the switcher to any downstream TSL devices.

Mnemonics

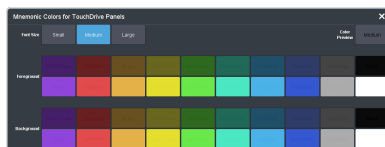
The mnemonic displays on the control panel show the name of the video source and can be customized for font size, color, and in some cases icons can be added. The customization that is available depends on the control panel you are using.

Note: The SoftPanel uses the Carbonite settings.

To Customize Mnemonics for TouchDrive

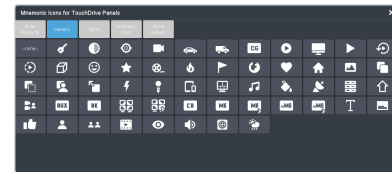
The TouchDrive control panels support RGB color mnemonics and icons.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > Inputs >** if you are setting up a physical input, or **Internal** if you are setting up an internal input.
2. Click the **TouchDrive** button for the source you want to customize the mnemonics for.



Setting	Description
Font Size	Click Small , Medium , or Large to select the size of the font used on the mnemonic display. The larger the font, the fewer characters that are visible on the mnemonic.
Foreground	Click a Foreground button to select the color you want to apply to the text and icon on the mnemonic.
Background	Click a Background button to select the color you want to apply to the background on the mnemonic.

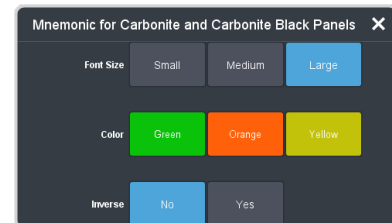
3. Click the **Icon** button for the source you want to customize the mnemonics for and click the icon you want to use.



To Customize Mnemonics for Carbonite Black

The Carbonite control panels support three-color mnemonics without icons.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > Inputs >** if you are setting up a physical input, or **Internal** if you are setting up an internal input.
2. Click the **Carbonite** button for the source you want to customize the mnemonics for.



Setting	Description
Font Size	Click Small , Medium , or Large to select the size of the font used on the mnemonic display. The larger the font, the fewer characters that are visible on the mnemonic.
Color	Click a Color button to select the color you want to apply to the mnemonic. The color is applied either to the background or the font, depending on the Inverse setting.
Inverse	Click an Inverse button to have the color applied to the background (No) or the text (Yes).

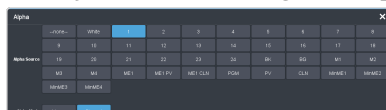
Auto Key Setup

An auto key allows you to associate a key alpha with a key video source in the switcher. When the video source is selected as a keyer, the key alpha is automatically used.

To Set Up an Auto Key Association

As well as input sources, internally generated sources, such as media-stores and color backgrounds, can be set up as an auto key.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > Inputs >** if you are setting up a physical input, or **Internal** if you are setting up an internal input.
2. Click the **Alpha** button for the key video source that you want to assign an alpha to.



3. Click the **Alpha Source** button for the source that you want to assign to the key video.
 - **--none--** — no alpha
 - **White** — uses internally generated white for the alpha
 - **XX** — assign the source on the selected input as a key alpha
 - **BK** — assign internal black as a key alpha
 - **BG** — assign the matte generator as a key alpha
 - **MX** — assign the video on Media-Store X as a key alpha
 - **MEX** — assign the program output of ME X as the key alpha
 - **MEX PV** — assign the preview output of ME X as the key alpha
 - **MEX CLN** — assign the clean feed output of ME X as the key alpha
 - **PGM** — assign the main program output as the key alpha
 - **PRV** — assign the main preview output as the key alpha
 - **CLN** — assign the main clean feed output as the key alpha
 - **MiniMEX** — assign the output of MiniME™ X as the key alpha
4. Click an **Alpha Mode** button to select the alpha mode for the key alpha.
 - **Linear** — switcher performs a multiplicative key. The key alpha cuts a hole based on the gradient values of the alpha. Shades of gray are translated into transparency levels, giving the key a soft edge. Unshaped key alphas can also be considered true linear alphas.
 - **Shaped** — switcher perform an additive key. With shaped keys, the key alpha cuts

a hole based on the monochrome value of the alpha. Shades of gray are translated into either white or black, giving the key a hard edge. Shaped Key alphas are sometimes used with Character Generators to cut very precise holes for the fill.

GPI Device Control

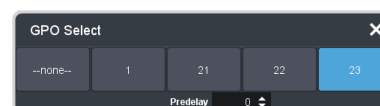
You can assign a GPI output to a video source for basic external device control. When a video source is taken on-air, the switcher can be set to trigger a GPI output, with a pre-delay. The external device can be set up to cue a clip, or load a page when it receives the GPI input trigger.

To Assign a GPI to a Video Source

Assign a GPI to a video source to trigger events on external devices.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > Inputs >** if you are setting up a physical input, or **Internal** if you are setting up an internal input.
2. Click the **GPO** button for the video source that you want to assign a GPI output to.

If you are using the GPI to control the device, the video source should be the video output coming from the device.
3. Click the GPI output that you want to assign to the video source.



Note: You must have GPIs set as outputs to be able to assign them to the video source.

4. In the **Pre-delay** field, enter the pre-delay time, in frames, you want to use with the GPI output.

When you transition a video source with a GPI assigned to it, and the Roll Clip feature is active, the switcher triggers the GPI output, and then waits the pre-delay time before performing the transition. The length of the pre-delay is usually the length of time your video server requires to start playing a clip or your character generator requires to load a page.

Tallies Setup

Tallies are simple contact closure relays that the switcher uses to signal other devices, and users, that a particular video source is on-air. Typically, tallies are used to light a red light on a camera to show people that they are on-air and what camera they should be looking at.

Note: Tallies are tied to the On-Air setting for the bus the source is selected on. If the bus is not set to be tallied as on-air, the tallies for the sources selected on that bus do not trigger. Refer to [On-Air Setting](#) on page 74 for information on setting the on-air status.

To Assign a Tally to an Input

Tallies are assigned to inputs and are triggered when that input is selected on a bus that is on-air or is going on-air.

1. Press **MENU > Config > NEXT > Tally**.
2. Press **Add**.

If you are editing, or deleting, an existing tally, use the **Add** knob to select the tally and press **Edit**, or **Delete**.

3. Use the **Tally** knob to select the tally or GPI output that you want to set up. This is the tally or GPI number, not the pin on the tally connector.

Note: A GPI must be set to tally mode before it can be used as a tally. Refer to [To Set Up a GPI Output](#) on page 91 for information in setting a GPI as a tally.

4. Use the **Input** knob to select the video source that you want to tally.
5. Use the **Output** knob to select the bus that you want to video source tallied for. When the video source is selected on this bus, the tally is triggered.
6. Press **Tally** to save the settings.

Custom Page Auto Follow

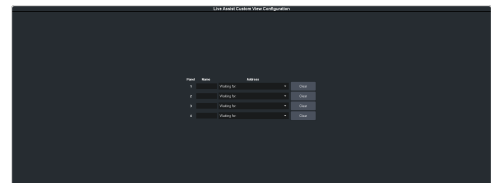
DashBoard pages can be assigned to custom page buttons in Live Assist. These custom pages can then be assigned to video inputs allowing Live Assist to auto follow to these pages when that video input is selected. For example, you can assign a custom page to the DashBoard page that controls a robotic camera. You can then set that custom page to follow the input from that camera. Whenever you select that camera as a source, Live Assist will jump to the custom page for that camera.

Note: PanelLink must be active in Live Assist for auto follow to function.

To Assign a Page to a Custom Page Button

The custom page buttons on the Live Assist page can be assigned any custom page or node in DashBoard. This allows you to quickly access controls from another device on DashBoard from Live Assist on your current device.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > System > Live Assist**.



2. Click on the **Address** drop-down list for the custom page button you want to assign to a page.
3. Select the connection or custom panel that you want to assign to the custom page button.
 - **All Connections** — expand the list and select the device and node that you want to assign to the custom page button. Some older DashBoard nodes from plug-ins may not display properly on the Live Assist buttons.
 - **Open Panels** — expand the list and select the open custom panel you want to assign to the list. You must have the custom panel running on DashBoard for it to appear in the list.

Note: Do not assign the Live Assist page to a custom page on the same machine.

Tip: Click **Clear** to remove the custom page and name assigned to that button.

4. Click on the name field for the custom page button you are assigning a page to and enter a descriptive name for the custom page. The name appears on the button in Live Assist.

To Assign a Custom Page to Follow an Input

Assign a Live Assist custom page to follow a physical or internal video source.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > Inputs >** if you are setting up a physical

input, or **Internal** if you are setting up an internal input.

2. Click the **Panel Follow** button for the input you want to assign a custom page to.



3. Click the custom page you want to assign to the input or click **none**.

Substitution Table

A substitution table allows you to specify a different source that will be taken on a bus when a specific source is selected on that bus. The substitution table requires either a MultiScreen or ME follow to be set up between the buses to trigger the substitution.

The substitution table can be used with the ME follows feature to create multilingual production feeds. For example, you can have ME 2 follow ME 1 to simultaneously produce multiple feeds. When a source is selected on ME 1, the same source is selected on ME 2. With the substitution table you can have it that when camera 1 is selected on ME 1 the follow will select camera 1 on ME 2 but the substitution table substitutes camera 4 for camera 1 on ME 2. Refer to [ME Follows](#) on page 74 for information on setting up ME follows.

When working with a MultiScreen setup, the substitution tables allow you to take pre-tiled sources from a CG or video server and have the switcher treat them as a single source across multiple areas or buses. When the first tile is selected on MiniME™ 1, the substitution table also selects the second tile on MiniME™ 2.

Keep the following in mind:

Keep the following in mind when working with substitution tables:

- When working with a MultiScreen, the bezel compensation and data doubling setting should be set up on the source generator.
- If you want to create a substitution for an auto-select key, you must set up a substitution for both the fill and the alpha.
- Selecting a crosspoint directly on a bus that has a substitution set up for it overrides the substitution. The substitution continues when a new source is selected on the leading bus.

To Set Up a Pre-Tiled Source

The substitution table is a single table that allows you to specify a different source that should be taken when a specific source is selected on a bus. The substitution table requires either a MultiScreen or ME follow to be set up between the buses to trigger the substitution.

***Tip:** When you select the Source on the ME/Bus, the Substitution source is taken instead.*

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > Inputs > Substitute**.



2. Click **New ME Sub** or **New Bus Sub** to select the type of substitution table you want to set up.
 - **New ME Sub** — create a substitution on a MiniME™.
 - **New Bus Sub** — create a substitution on a key bus of an ME or MiniME™, or an aux bus.
3. Click the **Source** button and select the source that you want to substitute with another source.
4. Click the **ME** or **Bus** button and select the area that you want the substitution to occur on.
5. Click the **Substitution** button and select source you want to substitute for the selected one. Repeat for any addition substitutions you want to create.
6. Click **Save**.

Video Outputs

The BNC outputs can have any video source in the switcher, including Media-Store channels, aux bus, and clean feed assigned to them.

Video Output Setup

You can assign a video source or bus to an output BNC. Some outputs can only be used for certain features

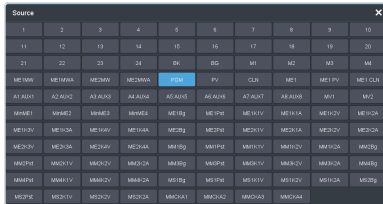
To Set up a Video Output

Assign video sources or buses to the video outputs.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > Outputs.**



2. Click on the **Source** button for the output that you want to assign a source to.



3. Click the video source that you want to assign to the output.
 - **XX** — input XX
 - **BK** — black
 - **BG** — matte generator
 - **MX** — Media-Store video channel X
 - **MEXMW** — Media-Store video channel used for MediaWipe effects on ME X (if installed)
 - **MEXMA** — Media-Store alpha channel used for MediaWipe effects on ME X (if installed)
 - **PGM** — main program output of the switcher
 - **PRV** — main preview output of the switcher
 - **CLN** — clean feed for main program of switcher

- **MEX** — main program output of ME X (if installed)
- **MEX PV** — main preview output of ME X (if installed)
- **MEX CLN** — clean feed output of ME X (if installed)
- **AUXXX** — output of aux bus XX
- **MVX** — the output of MultiViewer X
- **MinMEX** — main program output of MiniME™ X
- **MEXBg** — source on background of ME X (if installed)
- **MEXPst** — source on preset output of ME X (if installed)
- **MEXKYV** — key Y video of ME X (if installed)
- **MEXKYA** — key Y alpha of ME X (if installed)
- **MMXBg** — source on background of MiniME™ X
- **MMXPst** — source on preset output of MiniME™ X
- **MMXKYV** — key Y video of MiniME™ X
- **MMXKYA** — key Y alpha of MiniME™ X
- **MSXBg** — source on background of MultiScreen X
- **MSXPst** — source on preset output of MultiScreen X
- **MSXKYV** — key Y video of MultiScreen X
- **MSXKYA** — key Y alpha of MultiScreen X
- **MMCKAX** — MiniME™ chroma key X alpha

Note: The MiniME™ preset only shows the source that is selected on the preset bus for the MiniME™. This does not include keys or any video manipulation that is done if the MiniME™ is used as part of a MultiScreen.

Output Re-Clocking and Data Rate Selection

Re-clocking allows the router to minimize any jitter in the output signal. The Data Rate selection allows you to lock the router to an HD or SD output data rate, or have the router select the data rate automatically.

Tip: By default, re-clocking and automatic data rate are enabled for all outputs. You may want to disable output re-clocking to reduce the cumulative effects of serial re-clocking along a signal path.

To Set Up Output Re-Clocking and Data Rate Selection

1. In DashBoard, select the DashBoard node under the NK-IPS node that the frame is connected to.
2. Click the **Card Details** tab.
3. Click on the output card slot that you want to set up re-clocking or data rate selection on. Each card supports eight output BNCs on the back of the frame.

The current status of the card in the selected slot is shown to the right of the illustration of the frame. If a video signal is present on a BNC, the **Locked** indicator for that BNC shows green for an SD signal, or blue for an HD signal.

4. Select the **Reclocked Enabled** box for each BNC that you want to enable output re-clocking for.
5. Select the **Auto Data Rate** or **Manual Data Rate HD** boxes to set how you want the router to select the output data rate for each BNC.
 - **Auto Data Rate** — only **Auto Data Rate** box is selected
 - **HD Data Rate** — only **Manual Data Rate HD** box is selected
 - **SD Data Rate** — both boxes are de-selected
6. Click **Send Configuration**.
7. On the **Send Config to NK Device** dialog box, select the device that you want to send the new configuration to.
8. Click **Send**.

Ancillary Data

Ancillary data is information such as closed captioning or embedded audio that is included in the non-active video portions of the video signal. These portions include the Horizontal Ancillary Data Space (HANC) and Vertical Ancillary Data Space (VANC).

The switcher can be configured to strip or pass this data from the video output. The amount of data, and how it is stripped, depends on the video format of the video signal.

Note: FSFCs strip embedded audio data from the video signal.

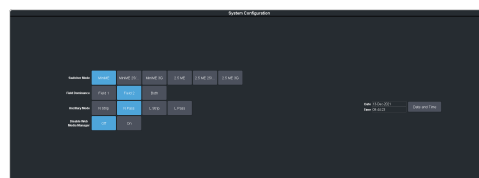
Table 3: Last Line of Vertical Ancillary Data

Video Format	Normal Strip/Pass	Long Strip/Pass
480i	19	21
576i	22	24
720p	25	25
1080i	20	20
1080p	41	41

To Strip or Pass Ancillary Data

Strip or pass ancillary data on video outputs. Video manipulation such as FSFC conversion automatically strips ancillary data from the video signal.

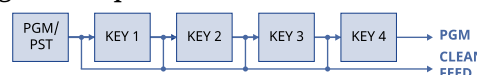
1. Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > System > Global**.



2. Click an **Ancillary Mode** button to select whether ancillary data is stripped or passed.
 - **N Strip** — ancillary data is stripped
 - **N Pass** — ancillary data is passed unmodified
 - **L Strip** — ancillary data and some lines of active video are replaced with black
 - **L Pass** — ancillary data and some lines of active video are passed unmodified

FlexiClean Clean Feed

FlexiClean clean feed provides a second program output per ME that is derived from a different point in the video layering than the standard program output. The clean feed can be set to come before any key in the video layering for an ME. This allows you to remove particular keys without affecting the primary program output.



Keep the following in mind:

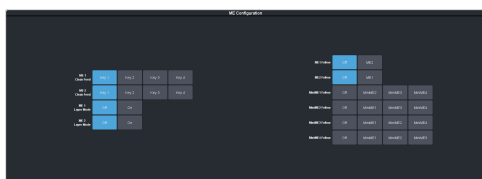
Keep the following in mind when working with clean feeds:

- Recalling a memory register using MemoryAI may cause the clean feed output to look different than expected. MemoryAI allows key elements to be recalled to other keys than originally resulting in different key layering.

To Set Up Clean Feed

Clean Feed can be taken before any or all of the keyers on an ME. This allows you to have a secondary output of an ME without any branding for re-broadcast or archival.

- Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > System > ME**.



- Click an **ME X Clean Feed** button to select which key the clean feed for that ME is taken before.

The selected key, and all keys after it, are not included in the clean feed output.

ME Follows

An ME or MiniME™ can be linked to another ME or MiniME™ so that actions performed on the first are duplicated on the following. Linking can only be set between areas of the same type. You cannot have a MiniME™ follow an ME.

Tip: The ME follows can also be used with the substitution table feature to create multilingual production feeds. For example, you can have ME 2 follow ME 1 to simultaneous produce multiple feeds. When a source is selected on ME 1, the same source is selected on ME 2. With the substitution table you can have it that when camera 1 is selected on ME 1 the follow will select camera 1 on ME 2 but the substitution table substitutes camera 4 for camera 1 on ME 2.

Keep the following in mind:

Keep the following in mind when working with ME Follows:

- You cannot have a MiniME™ follow an ME.
- There must be available resources for the following ME or MiniME™.
- Memories and resets are also performed on the following ME or MiniME™.
- Chroma Key initialization is only performed on the leading ME or MiniME™. The following ME or MiniME™ get the same chroma key parameters as the leading ME or MiniME™.

If you are substituting the source on the following ME or MiniME™ the chroma key will not be initialized properly for that source.

- You must turn the MultiScreen off to be able to set the follows for the MiniME™.
- You cannot cascade/re-enter follows. For example, if MiniME™ 1 is following MiniME™ 2, MiniME™ 2 cannot be set to following anything and no other MiniME™ can follow MiniME™ 1.

To Set Up an ME Follow

Set an ME or MiniME™ to follow another ME or MiniME™. Actions on the first ME or MiniME™ are duplicated on the following ME or MiniME™.

- Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > System > ME**.



- Click the **ME X Follow** or **MiniME X Follow** button for the ME that you want ME or MiniME™ X to follow.

For example, click **ME 2** in the **ME 1 Follow** row to have actions performed on ME 2 duplicated on ME 1.

Note: The MiniME™ follows are only available if the MiniME™ is not being used for a MultiScreen. You must turn the MultiScreen off to be able to set the follows for the MiniME™.

Tip: Select **Off** to have the ME or MiniME™ not follow anything.

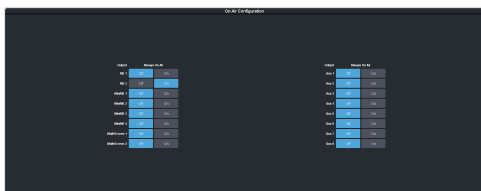
On-Air Setting

Some switcher outputs can be set to be considered on-air or not. This allows you to set which outputs are tallied, how resource allocation is divided, and how the Roll Clip feature works.

To Set the On-Air Status for an Output

Set an output to be on-air to tally sources that are selected on that bus.

- Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > On Air**.



2. Click an **Always OnAir** button for a output to select whether the output is considered on-air (**On**) or not (**Off**).

***Tip:** Setting an output to be always on-air tallies sources that are selected on that bus, or are going to be taken on-air with the next transition.*

MultiViewer

The MultiViewer allows you to view multiple video sources from a single output BNC. Video inputs or outputs on the switcher, including Program, Preview, and Media-Store channels, can be assigned to any box on the MultiViewer.

Up to 2 MultiViewer outputs are supported.

A time-clock can be added as an overlay to the MultiViewer showing either system time or time code.

Keep the following in mind:

Keep the following in mind when working with a MultiViewer:

- The layout is configured independently for each MultiViewer.
- Inputs are displayed with a red tally box when they are on-air. A green tally box is displayed when the input is selected on the Preset bus.
- When the switcher is operating in a standard-definition video format, the MultiViewer is shown in high-definition.
- All ancillary data is stripped from the MultiViewer outputs.

MultiViewer Output Formats

Depending on the format the switcher is operating in, the MultiViewer may output a different video format than the switcher is operating in.

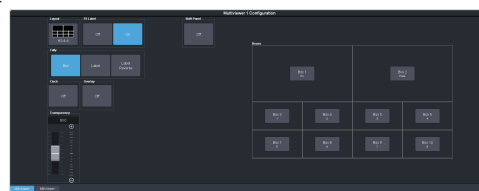
Switcher Video Format	MultiViewer Format
480i	1080i 59.94Hz
576i	1080i 50Hz
720p 50Hz	720p 50Hz
720p 59.94Hz	720p 59.94Hz
1080i 50Hz	1080i 50Hz
1080i 59.94Hz	1080i 59.94Hz
1080pSF 23.98Hz	1080pSF 23.98Hz
1080pSF 25Hz	1080i 50Hz
1080pSF 29.97Hz	1080i 59.94Hz
1080p 25Hz	1080p 25Hz
1080p 29.97Hz	1080p 29.97Hz
1080p 50Hz	1080i 50Hz
1080p 59.94Hz	1080i 59.94Hz

To Set Up a MultiViewer

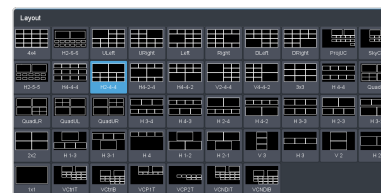
Note: A MultiViewer must be assigned to a video output to be usable.

Note: The available layouts and feature depend on the video format the switcher is operating in, the MultiViewer output, and the number of boxes in the layout being used.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > MultiViewers** and click the **MultiViewer X** button for the MultiViewer you want to set up.



2. Click the **Layout** button and select the arrangement of the boxes that you want to use for the selected MultiViewer.



3. Use the **Transparency** slider to adjust the transparency of the background behind the source label for the selected MultiViewer.
4. Apply an overlay to the MultiViewer as follows:

Note: The overlay feature is only available on MultiViewer outputs 1 and 2 when a layout of less than 16 boxes is used and the switcher is not operating in a 3G video format.

- a) Click the **Overlay** button and click **On** to turn the overlay on, or **Off** to turn it off.

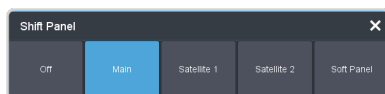
Tip: The overlay is primarily used for MultiViewer, but can also be used to overlay a camera shot of a shot-clock over the MultiViewer output.

- b) Click the **Source** button for the video source that you want to overlay over the MultiViewer output.
- c) Use the **Clip** slider to adjust the clipping of the overlay source.

At **0%** the overlay source is completely opaque, and at **100%** it is completely transparent.

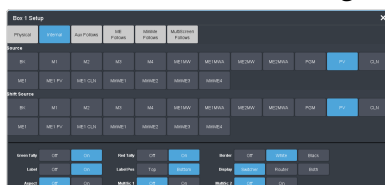
- Click a **Tally** button to select how boxes on the MultiViewer are tallied.
 - Box** — red or green border is shown around the outside of the MultiViewer box
 - Label** — red or green boxes are shown inside the label area of the MultiViewer box
 - Label Reverse** — the same as Label, but the placement of the tally boxes is swapped
- Click an **FS Label** button to select whether FSFC is shown on the source labels (**On**) or not (**Off**) when a FSFC is applied to the source.
- Click **Shift Panel** and select the panel that you want the MultiViewer shift to be active on. When the **Shift** button is pressed on the assigned control panel the MultiViewer shows the shifted sources.

Note: The shift function can only be assigned to a single panel at a time.



Tip: When the MultiViewer Shift is active, the box buttons on the layout show the shifted source in brackets.

- Click on one of the **Boxes** buttons and set up how that box appears on the MultiViewer in the standard and shifted configuration.



- Physical** — the physical inputs to the switcher on the input BNCs.
- Internal** — the internally generated sources of the switcher (ME, MiniME™, chroma key outputs, etc.).
- Aux Follows** — the aux buses.
- ME Follows** — the background, preset, and key buses of each ME.
- MiniME Follows** — the background, preset, and key buses of each MiniME™.
- Follows** — the background, preset, and key buses of each MultiScreen.

- Green Tally** — turn the preview (green) tally for the Video Processor MultiViewer box on or off.
- Red Tally** — turn the program (red) tally for the Video Processor MultiViewer box on or off.
- Border** — turn the border around the Video Processor MultiViewer box off (**Off**), white (**White**), or black (**Black**). When the border is turned off, some distortion may be visible around the edges of the box.
- Label** — turn source labels for the Video Processor MultiViewer box off, or on in a selected position
- Label Pos** — select a position for the source label for the Video Processor MultiViewer box (**Bottom** or **Top**).
- Display** — select whether the source name on the label shows the internal mnemonic name (**Switcher**), the TSL UMD name (**Router**), or both names (**Both**).

Tip: If you select a source on an aux bus that does not have a TSL UMD name, the mnemonic name is used instead on the MultiViewer.

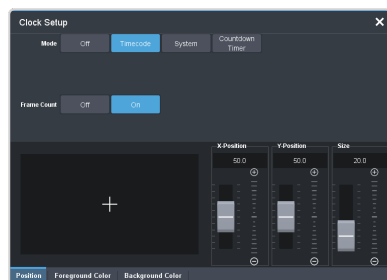
- Aspect** — turn aspect ratio markers for the Video Processor MultiViewer box on (**Aspect**) or off (**Off**).
- MultiSc X** — turn the MultiScreen overlay **Off** or **On**. The overlay shows what portions of the image are cropped to fit into the output of the MultiScreen.

To Set Up a MultiViewer Clock

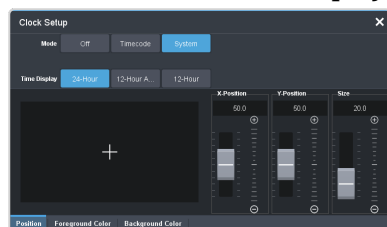
The clock can show the current system time or LTC data being sent to the switcher.

- Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > MultiViewers** and select the MultiViewer that you want to apply the clock overlay to.
- Click the **Clock** button.
- Click a **Mode** button to select the type of clock you want.
 - Off** — turns the clock off
 - Timecode** — displays the timecode fed to the switcher (hh:mm:ss:ff)
 - System** — displays the system time of the switcher in 12-hour or 24-hour format (hh:mm:ss)

4. For a **Timecode** clock, click a **Frame Count** button to select whether the number of frames for a timecode is displayed (**On**) or not (**Off**).



5. For a **System** clock, click a **Time Display** button to set how the time is displayed.



- **24 hr** — time is displayed in 24-hour format.
 - **12 hr** — time is displayed in 12-hour format without am/pm.
 - **12 hr AM/PM** — time is displayed in 12-hour format with am/pm.
6. Click the **Position** tab.
 7. Use the **X Position**, **Y Position**, and **Size** sliders to position the clock and change the size.
 8. Click the **Foreground Color** tab and select the color and transparency you want to use for the text of the clock.



9. Click the **Background Color** tab and select the color and transparency you want to use for the background of the clock.

MultiScreen / MiniME™

The MultiScreen allows you to output multiple video signals that can be combined into a single scene. The switcher treats the multiple outputs as a single background and translates the keys across the multiple backgrounds.

Tip: For information on pre-tiled sources, refer to [Substitution Table](#) on page 71.

Keep the following in mind:

Keep the following in mind when setting up a MultiScreen environment.

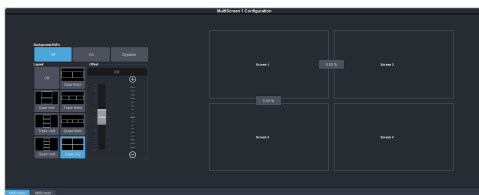
- The MultiScreen uses MiniME™ resources to provide the outputs. This allows you to have up to two DVE keys per screen of the MultiScreen. As a key crosses from one screen to the next, a key from either of the MiniME™ outputs is being used to provide the two halves of the key.
- MultiScreen does not support chroma keys.
- The MultiScreen can either take separate parts of a pre-tiled source, or scale a single source to the size of the MultiScreen output. When you use a pre-tiled source, you must assign sources to each MiniME™ that is used in the MultiScreen. This substitution table allows you to select a single source on the MultiScreen program bus and the switcher automatically assigns the required source to each MiniME™.

MiniME™ Assignment

Each MiniME™ output is pre-assigned to a screen on the MultiScreen layout. MiniME™ 1 and 2 are assigned to MultiScreen 1 and MiniME™ 3 and 4 are assigned to MultiScreen 2. If you select a layout that uses more than two screens, the MiniME™ resources that were assigned to MultiScreen 2 are assigned to MultiScreen 1.

To Set Up a MultiScreen

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > Canvases**.



2. Click **MultiScreen X** to select the MultiScreen you want to set up.
3. Click a **Layout** button to select the layout you want to use.

Note: The available layouts depend on the number of screens being used by the other MultiScreen.

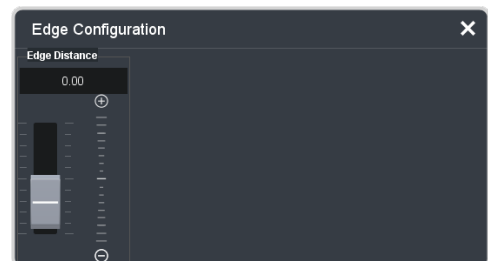
4. Click **Yes** to confirm.
5. Click a **Background DVEs** button to select how DVE resources are used to scale sources for the MultiScreen screens.
 - **Off** — DVE resources are not allocated to the MultiScreen for scaling of background sources.
 - **On** — DVE resources are always allocated to the MultiScreen for scaling of background sources. This reduces the number of available DVE resources to the switcher when a MultiScreen is turned on.
 - **Dynamic** — DVE resources are dynamically allocated to the MultiScreen for scaling of background sources if there is no substitution table.

Note: If there are no DVE resources to scale the background source across the entire MultiScreen, the switcher needs a substitution table to map separate inputs to the MultiScreen screens or the selected source is repeated in each screen of the MultiScreen.

6. Click **OK**.
7. Use the **Offset** slider to adjust the placement of the background scaling in the MultiScreen output.

This can be used to adjust for the aspect ratio difference between the input video and the MultiScreen output.

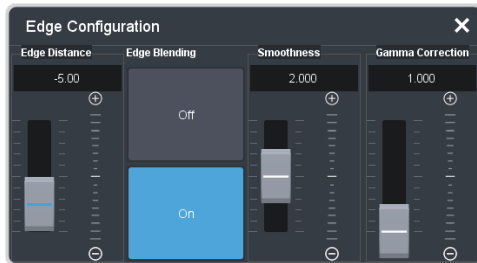
8. Click on the button between the two boxes to adjust the size of the edge between those two screens.



9. Use the **Edge Distance** slider to adjust the size of the gap between the MultiScreen screens.

- If you are using monitors for your MultiScreen display, you can use a positive value to compensate for the bezel on the outside of a display.
- If you are using projectors for your MultiScreen display, you can use the negative value to compensate for the amount of overlap of the projected images.

10. If you selected a negative distance, click an **Edge Blending** button to turn edge blending on (**On**) or off (**Off**).



11. If the edge blending is on, use the **Smoothness** and **Gamma Correction** sliders to correct for the overlap in projected images.
 - **Smoothness** — adjust the appearance of the transition area between the overlapping images.
 - **Gamma Correction** — adjust the gamma correction applied to the overlapping images to match the output of your projectors.
12. Repeat the edge adjustment for all other edges in your layout.

Frame Sync and Format Conversion

The switcher has multiple input frame synchronizer / format converter (FSFC) and input de-interlacers that can be used to convert video input signals to the format that the switcher is operating in, as well as correct mistimed, or drifting, video input signal. The frame synchronizers cannot completely correct badly formatted video, mistimed switches, signal drops, or similar issues.

Each FSFC channel maintains a separate setting for different video formats. This lets you change between video formats without losing FSFC channel configurations.

The Carbonite frame has up to 6 FSFC channels that are shared between all inputs. The Carbonite MultiMedia and Carbonite+ frames have a dedicated FSFC channel per input.

Keep the following in mind:

Keep the following in mind when working with Frame Synchronizers and Format Converters:

- De-Interlacing strips embedded audio data, and all other HANC and VANC data, from the video signal.
- If a video format not compatible with the currently defined conversion is used, the video image is frozen with the last successfully processed image frame.
- FSFCs create a one-frame delay in the video output of the switcher for the video signal being converted.
- FSFCs strip embedded audio data from the video signal. Ensure that no FSFC channels are assigned to any input or bus you are using with external audio mode.
- In the Carbonite and Carbonite eXtreme frames, FSFC channels are assigned to either specific video inputs or bus-pairs. Each bus-pair requires two FSFC for key video and key alpha, or program and preset. Aux buses do not require bus-pairs.
- If one FSFC channel in a bus-pair is turned off, the paired FSFC channel is also turned off.
- The switcher is set to switch on the first field when using Bus mode.
- Format conversion is not supported when the switcher is operating in a 1080pSF video

format. Only Frame Synchronization is supported.

- In the MiniME FSFC switcher mode, the switcher cannot frame sync a 1080pSF video format on input BNC 1. All other inputs work correctly.
- The FSFCs used in the switcher conform to the SMPTE ST 125:2013 standard. Some older equipment may not fully conform to the current standards and can send out-of-spec video to the switcher which can have unexpected results. Ensure that video coming into the switcher conforms to current standards, especially with regard to 480i video signals with variable blanking sizes.

Supported FSFC Video Formats

FSFCs can only convert between specific video formats at a given frequency. The available conversions also depends on the switcher mode you are in.

- In a 3G mode, the Carbonite MultiMedia and Carbonite+ switchers support synchronized and unsynchronized 1080p and 1080i inputs. The 1080i inputs are converted using a simple line-doubler and may result in lower quality video.
- In a 3G mode, the Carbonite and Carbonite eXtreme switchers only accept synchronized 1080p inputs.
- In a 1080p 25/29.97Hz mode, the Carbonite MultiMedia and Carbonite+ switchers support synchronized and unsynchronized 1080p 29.97Hz, 1080p 25Hz and 1080p 59.94Hz inputs. The 1080p 59.94Hz inputs are converted by dropping half the frames and may result in lower quality video.
- In a 3G/1080p mode, only 3 of every 6 dedicated FSFCs on the Carbonite MultiMedia and Carbonite+ switchers can be used. This means any 3 inputs on BNCs 1-6, any 3 on BNCs 7-12, any 3 on BNCs 13-18, and so on.

Table 4: Carbonite/Carbonite eXtreme Supported FSFC Input and Output Formats

Input	Switcher	Output
1080i 59.94Hz	1080p 59.94Hz	1080p 59.94Hz
720p 59.94Hz		
480i		

Input	Switcher	Output
1080i 50Hz	1080i 50Hz	1080i 50Hz
720p 50Hz		
576i		
720p 59.94Hz	720p 59.94Hz	720p 59.94Hz
720p 50Hz	720p 50Hz	720p 50Hz
576i	576i 50Hz	576i
1080i 50Hz		
720p 50Hz		
480i	480i 59.94Hz	480i
1080i 59.94Hz		
720p 59.94Hz		

Table 5: Carbonite MultiMedia Supported FSFC Input and Output Formats

Input	Switcher	Output
1080p 59.94Hz	1080p 59.94Hz	1080p 59.94Hz
1080i 59.94Hz		
1080p 50Hz	1080p 50Hz	1080p 50Hz
1080i 50Hz ¹		
1080p 59.94Hz ²		
1080p 29.97Hz	1080p 29.97Hz	1080p 29.97Hz
1080p 59.94Hz ²		
1080p 25Hz	1080p 25Hz	1080p 25Hz
1080p 50Hz ²		
1080i 59.94Hz	1080i 59.94Hz	1080i 59.94Hz
1080p 59.94Hz ³		
720p 59.94Hz		
480i		
1080i 50Hz	1080i 50Hz	1080i 50Hz
1080p 50Hz ³		
720p 50Hz		
576i		
720p 59.94Hz	720p 59.94Hz	720p 59.94Hz
1080p 59.94Hz ³		
1080i 59.94Hz ⁴		
480i ⁴		

Input	Switcher	Output
720p 50Hz	720p 50Hz	720p 50Hz
1080p 50Hz		
1080i 50Hz ⁴		
576i ⁴		
576i	576i 50Hz	576i
1080p 50Hz ³		
1080i 50Hz		
720p 50Hz		
480i	480i 59.94Hz	480i
1080p 59.94Hz ³		
1080i 59.94Hz		
720p 59.94Hz		

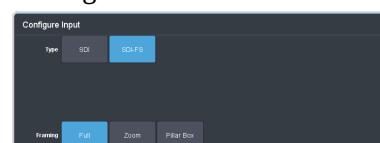
Notes

- ¹ Converted using either a simple line-doubler or 4-line interpolator and may result in lower quality video.
- ² Converted by dropping frames and may result in lower quality video.
- ³ HDMI port only.
- ⁴ MultiMedia port only.

To Set Up Input Mode FSFC

Input mode locks a specific FSFC channel to a specific input. Refer to [Supported FSFC Video Formats](#) on page 81 for a list of compatible video format conversions.

- Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > Inputs > .**
- Click the **Configure** button for the input you want to assign an FSFC to.



- Click a **Type** button to turn on the FSFC.
 - SDI** — no FSFC is applied to the input.
 - SDI-FS** — an FSFC is applied to the input.
- If required, select the aspect ratio conversion mode you want to use.

The options that are available depend on the video format that the switcher is converting from and to.

- **Full** — The video signal is scaled disproportionately to fill the display of the new aspect ratio. Aspect distortion occurs as the image is stretched/compressed to fit in the new aspect ratio.
- **Zoom** — The central portion of the video signal is zoomed to fill the display of the new video format. No aspect distortion is introduced but the edges of the video signal may be cropped.
- **Letter Box** — Black bars are added to the top and bottom of a 16:9 image to display correctly in a 4:3 video format.
- **Pillar Box** — Black bars are added to the right and left of a 4:3 image to display correctly in a 16:9 video format.

To Set Up Bus Mode FSFC

Note: Bus mode is not supported on MiniME™ or MultiScreen buses.

Bus mode locks a specified FSFC channel to a specific bus.

1. Use the **FSFCx** knob to select **Bus**.
2. Use the **Bus** knob to select the bus you want to assign the FSFC to.
3. Use the **2ndCh** knob to select the second FSFC channel that you want to pair with the assigned channel.

In a bus-pair keyer configuration, the first channel is used to convert the key video, and the second channel is used to convert the key alpha.

4. Press **NEXT**.
5. If required, select the aspect ratio conversion mode you want to use.

The options that are available depend on the video format that the switcher is converting from and to.

- **Full** — The video signal is scaled disproportionately to fill the display of the new aspect ratio. Aspect distortion occurs as the image is stretched/compressed to fit in the new aspect ratio.
- **Zoom** — The central portion of the video signal is zoomed to fill the display of the new video format. No aspect distortion is introduced but the edges of the video signal may be cropped.

- **Letter Box** — Black bars are added to the top and bottom of a 16:9 image to display correctly in a 4:3 video format.
- **Pillar Box** — Black bars are added to the right and left of a 4:3 image to display correctly in a 16:9 video format.

6. Press the **Frmg** knob.

7. Press the **Confirm** knob to assign the FSFC channel.

Aspect Ratio Conversion

Converting between standard-definition and high-definition video formats often requires converting between 4:3 and 16:9 aspect ratios. The switcher support Full, Zoom, Letterbox, and Pillarbox conversions.

In 480i and 576i video formats you can use either a 4:3 or 16:9 aspect ratio.

Full

The video signal is scaled disproportionately to fill the display of the new aspect ratio. Aspect distortion occurs as the image is stretched/compressed to fit in the new aspect ratio.

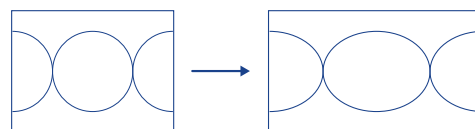


Figure 6: 4:3 to 16:9 Full Aspect Ratio Conversion

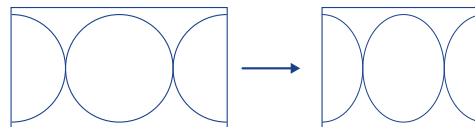


Figure 7: 16:9 to 4:3 Full Aspect Ratio Conversion

Zoom

The central portion of the video signal is zoomed to fill the display of the new video format. No aspect distortion is introduced but the edges of the video signal may be cropped.

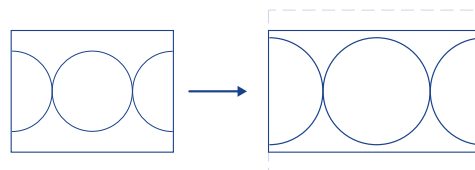


Figure 8: 4:3 to 16:9 Zoom Aspect Ratio Conversion

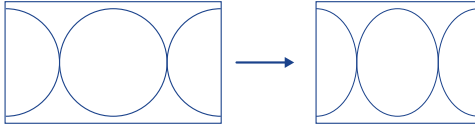


Figure 9: 16:9 to 4:3 Full Aspect Ratio Conversion

Letterbox

Black bars are added to the top and bottom of a 16:9 image to display correctly in a 4:3 video format.

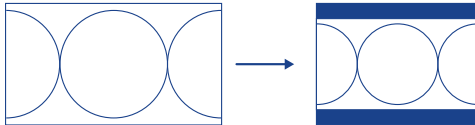


Figure 10: 16:9 to 4:3 Letterbox Aspect Ratio Conversion

Pillarbox

Black bars are added to the right and left of a 4:3 image to display correctly in a 16:9 video format.

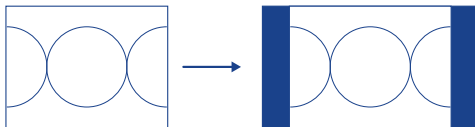


Figure 11: 4:3 to 16:9 Pillarbox Aspect Ratio Conversion

To Set an Aspect Ratio for 480i/576i

You can only select an aspect ratio if the switcher is operating in 480i or 576i.

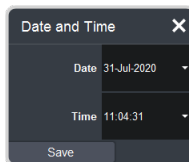
1. Press **MENU** > **Config** > **Input** > **NEXT**.
2. Use the **Input** knob to select the input that you want to set the aspect ratio for.
3. Use the **SD ASP** knob to select the aspect ratio (**16:9** or **4:3**) that you want to use.
4. Press the **Input** knob.
5. Press the **Confirm** knob to assign the aspect ratio.

System Real-Time Clock/Date

The switcher uses an internal clock to generate the time for the clock overlay for the MultiViewer.

To Set the System Real-Time Time and Date

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > System > Global**.
2. Click **Date and Time**.



3. Click on the **Date** field and select the current date.
4. Click on the **Time** field and select the current time.
5. Click **Save**.

Personality

Personality settings allow you to configure how you interact with the control panel and switcher, as well as how the buttons on the control panel appear. All of these settings are stored in the Personality register.

Personality Settings

There are a number of settings for how the switcher will react to different situations, or how switcher elements appear to the operator. All these settings are grouped together into the Switcher Personality. These settings include double-press rates and sleep time, among others.

General Settings

- Click **Navigation Menu > Personality > General**, or **Transition** for the transition settings.



Personality	Description
Editor Port	<p>Allow the switcher to be controlled by an external editor. The external editor can control the switcher to perform transitions, or recall memories, among the supported commands. This setting is for the frame.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> On — allow the switcher to be controlled by an external editor. Off — switcher ignores editor commands.
Button Brightness	<p>Set the overall brightness (0-100%) of all the buttons on any physical control panel connected to the switcher. This setting is unique to the control panel.</p>
Rate	<p>Have the switcher use frames or seconds for transition rates. Rates are entered and displayed in the select selected values. This setting is unique to the control panel.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Frames — transition rates are in frames. Seconds — transition rates are in seconds.

Personality	Description
Sleep Mode	<p>have the switcher go into a sleep mode after a user-defined amount of time (Sleep Minutes) without user interaction. Touching any button, knob, or fader will wake the switcher. The switcher does not act on the button, knob, or fader control that wakes it from sleep mode. During sleep mode, video related hardware is not affected and video signals still pass through the switcher. This setting is unique to the control panel.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Power Save — all buttons and displays are turned off and as much power is conserved as possible. Sleep — displays are turned off and buttons light in raindrop pattern.
Sleep Minutes	<p>The amount of time that the switcher waits without user input before going into sleep mode. Setting the value to 0 (Off) prevents the switcher from entering sleep mode. This setting is unique to the control panel.</p>
Toggle Shift	<p>Have the Shift button either be latching (toggle) or momentary (off). When in toggle mode, you can press the shift button and then select a source on the shifted bus without having to hold down the shift button. This only affects the bus the shift button is on. This setting is unique to the control panel.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Off — the Shift button only stays on as long as you are holding it down. Toggle — when you press the Shift button it stays on until you press a source button on that bus.
Memory Bank	<p>Allows you to set how the BANK button behaves when pressed and released. This setting is unique to the control panel.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Normal — the keypad is used to enter the bank number directly, followed by the memory (For example, to access memory 3 on bank 2, press BANK > 2 > 3.) Legacy — the next bank is selected every time the button is pressed, cycling through all banks (For example, to access bank 5, press BANK repeatedly until bank 5 is selected.)
Memory Undo	<p>A memory recall can be reversed by pressing the memory number a second time after a memory is recalled. This is the same as pressing the UNDO button, if present on your control panel. This setting is unique to the control panel.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Off — pressing the memory number again does not undo the recall. On — pressing the memory number again undoes the last memory recall.

Transition Settings

- Click **Navigation Menu** > **Personality** > **Transition**.



Personality	Description
Transition	<p>Have the next transition reset to a default background dissolve after each transition. This allows you to prevent the selections from the last transition from being accidentally included with the next transition. This setting is for the frame.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> No Reset — the next transition settings are not changed after a transition. Reset — the next transition is reset to a background only transition after a transition.
Next Transition	<p>Have the next transition buttons on the control panel latch when pressed (toggle). This setting is unique to the control panel.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Off — press and hold all the buttons you want included in the next transition. All buttons must be pressed at the same time. Toggle — press a button to toggle it on or off as being included in the next transition.
Remove Keys	<p>Have a key removed from the next transition after it has been transitioned off-air using key Cut or Trans buttons. This allows you to transition a key off-air in an emergency and not have it accidentally transitioned back on-air with the next transition. This setting is for the frame.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Off — key can remain part of the next transition when it is independently transitioned off-air. On — key is removed as part of the next transition when it is independently transitioned off-air.
Background Double Press	<p>Have a double-press of the next transition background button select the background and all on-air keys as part of the next transition. This setting is unique to the control panel.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Ignore — ignore the double-press of the next transition background button. Transition Clear — set the next transition to include the background and only the on-air keys. If an off-key is selected as part of the next transition it is deselected.

Personality	Description
ME Auto Trans Double Press	<p>Set what action is performed when the auto transition button is pressed again during a transition. This setting is for the frame.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Halt Forward — the transition is halted and then continues in the same direction when the transition button is pressed again. Reverse — the transition immediately reverses directions when the transition button is pressed. Halt Reverse — the transition is halted and then reverses directions when the transition button is pressed again. Cut — the transition immediately cuts back to the initial state when the transition button is pressed. Ignore — the button press is ignored and the transition continues.
Key Auto Trans Double Press	<p>Set what action is performed when the independent key auto transition button is pressed again during a transition. This setting is for the frame.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Halt Forward — the transition is halted and then continues in the same direction when the transition button is pressed again. Reverse — the transition immediately reverses directions when the transition button is pressed. Halt Reverse — the transition is halted and then reverses directions when the transition button is pressed again. Cut — the transition immediately cuts back to the initial state when the transition button is pressed. Ignore — the button press is ignored and the transition continues.
Roll Clip	<p>Set whether the roll clip feature is always on, or must be turned on manually. This setting is for the frame.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> User — the roll clip feature must be turned on manually. Force — the roll clip feature is always on.

Memory Button Behavior

Note: This feature is not available on the C1-A or C10.

The store and recall buttons next to the display can be set to either select ME 1 or ME 2 directly, or select the list of MEs, MiniME™s, or MultiScreens. This is useful if you do not want the pressing of a store or recall button to select or de-select an ME. The selection of what is included in the memory store or recall is done by pressing and holding either of the store or recall buttons and selecting the source buttons

on the keyer bus for the MEs, MiniME™s, or MultiScreens you want to include.

To Set the Memory Button Behavior

1. Press **Store** > **NEXT** > **NEXT**.
2. Use the **MemBtn** knob to select whether both of the store and recall buttons act together (**Single**), or as separate ME specific buttons (**Indiv**).

Memory Recall Behavior

Note: This feature is available on the C10 and C1 only.

The switcher can be set to select the current ME as the ME memories are recalled on by default.

To Set the Memory Recall Behavior

1. Press **MENU** > **PERS** > **NEXT**.
2. Use the **MESel** knob to select how you want memories to recall.
 - **Hold** — you must select the ME that the memory is recalled on
 - **Follow** — memories are recalled on the ME selected on the control panel

Router Mnemonics

The source mnemonics can display the switcher name for the source, the router name, or both.

To Set the Display Name for Router Mnemonics

1. Press **MENU** > **PERS** > **NEXT** > **NEXT**.
2. Use the **RtMnem** knob to select how the source names from the router subsystem are displayed on the switcher mnemonics.
 - **Swtchr** — only the switcher name is shown.
 - **Router** — only the router name is shown
 - **Both** — switcher name is shown in inverse color on the top part of the mnemonic and the router name is shown on the bottom part.

Color Schemes

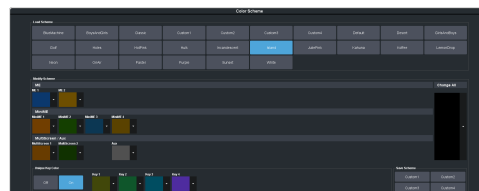
The buttons on the control panel glow with different colors specific to their state, function, and assignment. This color can be selected from a list of pre-set color schemes, or a custom color

can be selected. Up to four (4) custom color schemes can be saved on the switcher.

To Select a Color Scheme

ME, MiniME™, MultiScreen, aux buses, and keyers can be set to different colors by loading one of the pre-installed color scheme. This setting is unique to the control panel.

1. Click **Navigation Menu** > **Personality** > **Color Scheme**.



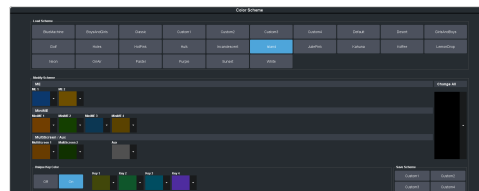
2. In the **Load Scheme** area, select the color scheme you want to use on the control panel.

Tip: You can load a pre-loaded color scheme and then modify the colors and save it as a custom color scheme. You cannot save your modifications back to the pre-loaded color scheme.

To Create a Custom Color Scheme

A custom color scheme can be created and used instead of one of the pre-loaded color schemes. This setting is unique to the control panel.

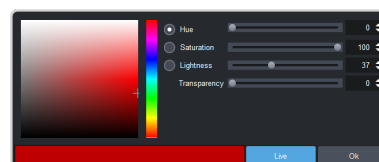
1. Click **Navigation Menu** > **Personality** > **Color Scheme**.



2. In the **Modify Scheme** area, click the ME, MiniME™, MultiScreen, or aux that you want to change the color for.

Tip: Click **Change All** to change the color of all the areas at once. They will all use the selected color.

3. Use the color picker to select the new color you want to use and click **Ok**.



Tip: Click **Live** to have the color changes update in real time on the control panel.

4. In the **Unique Key Color** area select how you want the keyer buttons on the control panel to be colored.
 - **Off** — the keyer buttons use the same color as their ME, MiniME™, or MultiScreen.
 - **On** — the keyer buttons use the unique colors assigned to each key. Click the key that you want to change the color for and use the color picker to change the color.
5. Click a **Custom X** button to store your color scheme to that location.
6. Click **Yes**.

Bus Maps

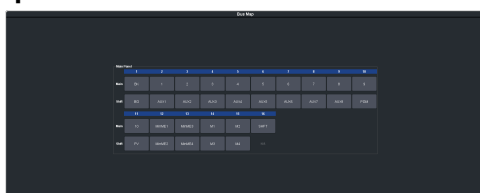
Any video input can be mapped to any source button on the control panel using a bus map. Each source button can have two inputs assigned (a standard source and a shifted source).

To Create a Bus Map

The bus map assigns video sources to the buttons on the control panel.

Note: The bus map is unique to the control panel (Main, Sat 1, Sat 2, or Sat 3) and can only be set for that control panel.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Personality > Bus Map**.



2. Click the source button that you want to assign a source to and select the source you want to assign to that button.

Tip: You must assign a button to the Shift function to be able to access those source buttons on the control panel.



User Buttons

These buttons can be assigned to a number of functions, including ME and key selections, custom control, and memories. The number and position of the buttons on the control panel depend on the model of your control panel.

If a button is assigned to an ME, aux bus, MiniME™, MultiScreen, or chroma key, you can press and hold the button to be able to select a different ME, aux bus, MiniME™, MultiScreen, or chroma key from the key bus. If the user button is assigned to an Aux, it will allow you to select a different Aux.

To Set A User Button

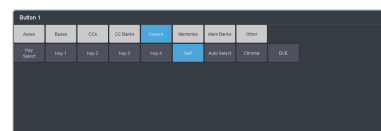
1. Click **Navigation Menu > Personality > User Select**.

Note: The menu only shows the user buttons that are available on your control panel.



2. Click the user button that you want to assign a function to and select the function you want to assign to that button.

Tip: Each row on your control panel can have a separate set of user button assignment. These settings are tied to the row, and not the ME that is assigned to that row.



Note: The functions that are available on your switcher may differ depending on the options you have installed and how your switcher is configured.

GPI Control

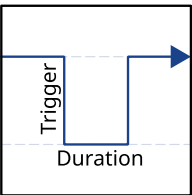
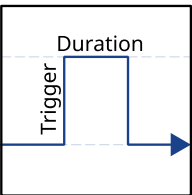
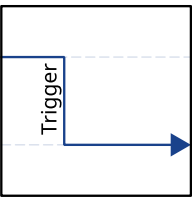
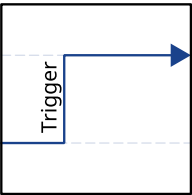
General Purpose Interface (GPI) is a high/low voltage signalling protocol that allows the switcher to send simple commands to an external device, or receive commands from a device. Each pin on the GPI is set as either high (+5 Volts), or low (0 Volts), and it is the switching between high and low that sends commands to the external device, or to the switcher.

Note: Tally and GPI ports are located on the breakout panel for Carbonite eXtreme.

GPI Trigger Types

There are four trigger types supported by the switcher. These can be either output triggers, or input triggers.

Table 6: Trigger Types

Trigger	Description	
Low Edge	The output level is set high, and momentarily goes low for the trigger.	
High Edge	The output level is set low, and momentarily goes high for the trigger.	
Low Level	The output level toggles from the base high level to the low level. The output signal remains at this level until reset.	
High Level	The output toggles from the base low level to the high level. The output signal remains at this level until reset.	

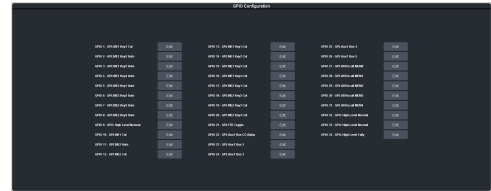
GPI Setup

Each GPI pin on the switcher can be configured as either an input, or an output. By default, all GPIs are set as inputs.

To Set Up a GPI Input

The switcher requires a Low Edge GPI input trigger.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > GPIO**.



2. Click **Edit** for the GPI that you want to configure as an input.
3. Click **GPI**.



4. Click the **Event** button for the action you want to assign to the selected GPI input pin.

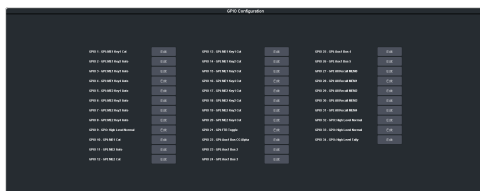
Setting	Description
--none--	No action is taken
CC	Run a specific custom control: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Enter the custom control bank in the Bank field. b. Enter the custom control in the CC field.
Mem Recall	Recall a memory on all MEs: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Enter the memory to recall in the Mem field.
FTB	Perform a transition to black on the program ME that also takes all keys off-air. The source originally selected on program is selected on preset
ME Cut	Perform a background cut on the selected ME: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Click an ME button to select the ME, MiniME™, or MultiScreen.
ME Auto	Perform a background auto transition on the selected ME: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Click an ME button to select the ME, MiniME™, or MultiScreen.

Setting	Description
Key Cut	Perform a key cut on the selected ME and key: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Click an ME button to select the ME, MiniME™, or MultiScreen. Click a Key button to select the keyer.
Key Auto	Perform a key auto transition on the selected ME, MiniME™, or MultiScreen and key: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Click an ME button to select the ME, MiniME™, or MultiScreen. Click a Key to select the keyer number.
Aux Xpt	Select a video source on an aux bus: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Click the Aux button and select the aux bus. Click the Source button and select the video source.

To Set Up a GPI Output

A GPI output can be set as a Normal GPI output, or as a Tally output. As a tally output, the GPI output must be assigned to a video source. A GPI output in tally mode can still be used as a normal GPI output.

- Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > GPIO**.



- Click **Edit** for the GPI that you want to configure as an output.
- Click **GPO**.



- Click a **Level** button to select whether you want the GPI to trigger low (**Low**), or high (**High**).
- Click a **Trigger** button to select whether you want to use an edge trigger (**Edge**), or a level trigger (**Level**).
- For edge triggers, use the **Duration (fr)** slider to set the length of time (in frames) that the GPI edge output remains triggered.

- For level triggers, click a **Mode** button to select how you want to GPI output to act.
 - Normal** — when assigned to a video source and RollClip is active, will trigger with the source going on-air, and back with the source going off-air (pre-delay values are only used when the source is going on-air)
 - Tally** — when assigned to a video source, will trigger with the source going on-air, and back with the source going off-air (RollClip and pre-delay values are ignored)

GPI Output Triggers

Each video source can have a GPI output assigned to it. This GPI can be used to trigger an external device, such as a video server, to play the cued clip when the video sources from the video server are taken on-air.

A GPI trigger can be set up to occur automatically any time the video source is transitioned on-air, or it can be triggered manually.

Note: The Next Button Secondary Function must be set to GPO to be able to trigger a GPI output manually using the **NEXT** button on the control panel.

Keep the following in mind:

Keep the following in mind when working with GPI output triggers:

- The **Roll Clip** must be set to **On** to trigger a GPI output with a transition.
- Edge triggered GPI outputs remain triggered for the configured duration.
- Level triggered GPI outputs toggle between high and low each time they are triggered.

To Assign a GPI Output to a Video Source

You can set a pre-delay, or pre-roll, that will specify when the GPI is triggered in relation to taking the video source on-air. This is useful for VTR pre-roll delay and other situations where an input source is not immediately ready to be taken to air.

Note: The roll clip function must be set to on to trigger the GPI output with a transition.

- Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > Inputs** > if you are setting up a physical

input, or **Internal** if you are setting up an internal input.

2. Click the **GPO** button for the video source that you want to assign a GPI output to.



When you select this source on a bus, the GPI output will trigger automatically.

Note: *Not all sources can have a GPI assigned to them.*

3. Click the **GPO** button for GPI output that you want to assign to the selected video source. A GPI must be configured as an output to appear on the list.
4. In the **Predelay** field, enter the pre-delay interval (in frames) that the switcher waits after the GPI output is triggered before taking the source on-air.

Live Edit Decision Lists (LiveEDL)

Edit Decision Lists are files used by non-linear editing (NLE) suites to aid in post-production. Your switcher can capture EDL data in a file that you load into your NLE suite.

LiveEDL Setup

You can configure your switcher to trigger multiple GPI outputs at the start, end, or both, of an EDL data capture to trigger video servers that are recording the feeds coming into the switcher. The EDL data from the switcher can then be paired with the feeds from the video servers, using the timecode data, in the NLE suite to edit or re-cut the show.



Important: A control panel is required to configure this feature. If you do not have access to a physical control panel, the SoftPanel can be used.

You can also set a pre-delay for each GPI output. EDL data capture does not begin until the highest pre-delay has passed. This is useful when the switcher needs to wait for external equipment to become ready. The example below shows the effects of various triggering and pre-delay settings.

To Set the LiveEDL Behavior



Important: A control panel is required to perform this procedure. If you do not have access to a physical control panel, the SoftPanel can be used. The position of items on the menus on the SoftPanel may not match those of a physical panel.

1. Press **MENU > System > NEXT > NEXT > NEXT > LiveEDL Config**.
2. Use the **GPO** knob to select the GPI output that is connected to your video server. The GPI must be configured as a GPI output before it can be selected.
3. Use the **Triggr** knob to select when the GPI output is triggered.
 - **Off** — GPI is not triggered
 - **Start** — GPI output is triggered at the beginning of the EDL capture
 - **Stop** — GPI output is triggered at the end of the EDL capture

- **Both** — GPI output is triggered at the beginning and end of the EDL capture

If Start or Both is selected, you must set the pre-delay for the GPI.

4. Use the **PreDly** knob to select the pre-delay interval (in frames) that the switcher waits after the GPI output is triggered before starting to capture EDL data.

Timecode Setup

The switcher uses timecode data to mark the EDL file so that it can be used in the non-linear editing suite along with the feeds from the video servers. The timecode data can be either from an external timecode generator, or internally generated. An offset can be applied to both timecode sources.

For an external timecode, an LTC generator must be connected to the LTC port on the back of the frame.

To Confirm External LTC Signal

If you have an external linear timecode generator connected to the switcher, you can confirm that the switcher is receiving timecode data.



Important: A control panel is required to perform this procedure. If you do not have access to a physical control panel, the SoftPanel can be used. The position of items on the menus on the SoftPanel may not match those of a physical panel.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Status / Power**
2. Confirm that the information shown in the **Timecode** field matches the timecode from the timecode generator.

If required, an offset can be applied to the incoming timecode data.

To Set Up Communications with a TSC-9902



Important: A control panel is required to perform this procedure. If you do not have access to a physical control panel, the SoftPanel can be used. The position of items on the menus on the SoftPanel may not match those of a physical panel.

1. Press **MENU > System > NEXT > NEXT > Device Configure**.
2. Press the **Add** knob.
3. Use the **Slot** knob to select **SP** (serial port).
4. Use the **Type** knob to select **LTC**.

5. Press **NEXT**.
6. Use the **SubType** knob to select **LTC_#.#**.
7. Press the **SubType** knob.
8. Press the **Confirm** knob to save your settings.

To Set the LTC Timecode Source

If you are using an external timecode generator, an offset, or delay, is applied to the incoming timecode signal before it is stored in the LiveEDL data file. If you are using an internal timecode, the offset is the starting time that the switcher uses for the timecode that is stored in the LiveEDL file.



Important: A control panel is required to perform this procedure. If you do not have access to a physical control panel, the SoftPanel can be used. The position of items on the menus on the SoftPanel may not match those of a physical panel.

Note: If a valid timecode signal is detected on the LTC port on the frame, the external timecode will be used even if an internal timecode is set.

1. Press **MENU > System > NEXT > NEXT > NEXT > LiveEDL Config > NEXT**.
2. Use the **Offset** knob to select the source of the timecode data you want to use.
 - **Ext.** — the timecode data received on the LTC port is used
 - **Int.** — an internal timecode is generated
3. Set the timecode offset for an External timecode as follows:
 - a) Use the **LTCOff** knob to select the offset, in frames, that you want to delay the incoming timecode signal by.
4. Set the starting time for an Internal timecode as follows:
 - a) Use the **Field** knob to select the hours, minutes, or seconds that you want to adjust.
The timecode is shown in the [HH:MM:SS] format.
 - b) Use the **Value** knob to set the starting time in the selected field.

LiveEDL Data Capture

Capturing EDL data is manually started and stopped from the switcher. When you select to start capturing EDL data, and GPI outputs set to trigger on start are triggered. If a pre-delay has been set for the GPIs, the switcher does not start

capturing EDL data until the pre-delay time has finished.

When you stop capturing EDL data, you have the option to delete the data, or save it to a USB drive. You can also connect to the switcher via FTP and download the files directly to your editing suite. Use the username `liveedl` and password `password` to create the FTP connection to the switcher.

Keep the following in mind:

Keep the following in mind when reviewing the EDL data from the switcher:

- When a MediaWipe is selected as the transition type, the switcher records the transition duration as the cut point frame multiplied by two (2). This is to ensure that the cut point is recorded accurately.
- If you used more than one ME, or Aux bus, in your shot, a separate EDL file is saved for each ME and Aux bus. The ME re-entry is shown as being selected on the first ME, and the source selections on the second ME are saved to the separate LiveEDL file. Aux bus information is only stored to a LiveEDL file when the Aux bus is not in fixed mode.

To Start Capturing EDL Data

The EDL data can be stored to one of 1000 LiveEDL files stored on the switcher. A separate file is created for each ME when the additional MEs are used.



Important: A control panel is required to perform this procedure. If you do not have access to a physical control panel, the SoftPanel can be used. The position of items on the menus on the SoftPanel may not match those of a physical panel.

1. Press **MENU > User > LiveEDL**.
2. Use the **Start** knob to select the LiveEDL file on the switcher that you want to store the EDL data to.
If the LiveEDL file already contains data, you are given the option to delete the data, or save it to a USB.
3. Press the **Start** knob to start recording.

To Stop Capturing and Save EDL Data



Important: A control panel is required to perform this procedure. If you do not have access to a physical control panel, the SoftPanel can be used.

The position of items on the menus on the SoftPanel may not match those of a physical panel.

1. Press **MENU > User > LiveEDL**.
2. Press the **Stop** knob to stop recording.
3. Save the EDL data to a USB as follows:
 - a) Insert your USB drive into the USB Port on the switcher. You must wait 5 seconds for the switcher to recognise the USB drive.
 - b) Press the **Save** knob.
 - c) Press the **Confirm** knob to store the LiveEDL file to the USB drive.

ViewControl (HD Only)

The ViewControl interface through DashBoard allows you to coordinate the control over the Carbonite switcher, XPression Live Graphics System, and the BlackStorm Playout Server all through a touchscreen interface. Through ViewControl you can select sources, perform transitions, and run custom controls.

Keep the following in mind:

Keep the following in mind when working with ViewControl:

- ViewControl requires DashBoard 5.1, or later.
- Only the sources assigned to the MultiViewer boxes are available for direct selection. Custom controls can be used to select other sources.
- The control panel does not follow key and bus selections made on ViewControl.
- The MultiViewer Shift must be set to the main or satellite panel that the DashBoard you are using for ViewControl is assigned to.

ViewControl Overview

The ViewControl interface provides quick access to a number of custom control buttons as well as the transition functionality of the switcher.

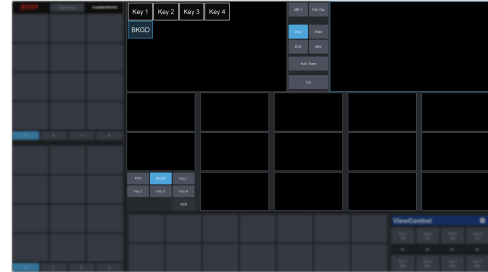
Custom Control Buttons

The custom control buttons can be assigned to any custom control on the switcher and given unique names and icons. The button groups on the left (shown below) are organized into groups, or tabs. The buttons along the bottom are constant across all tabs.



Bus Selection Buttons

The bus selection buttons allow you to select the different buses on different ME and MiniME™ outputs of the switcher.



To Select a Source on a Bus

1. Click **ME 3** at the top and click the ME or MiniME™ that you want to select a bus on.

Tip: If the Shift feature is active the Program and Preview boxes will switch to the selected ME or MiniME™.

2. Click the bus you want to select a source on at the lower left.
3. Click on the source (MultiViewer box) that you want to assign to the selected bus.

*Tip: Click **Shift** to access the sources on the shifted MultiViewer boxes.*

Keyer Transition Buttons

The Keyer Transition buttons allow you to perform a cut or dissolve of the keys on the selected ME or MiniME™. These buttons act the same as the Keyer Transition Buttons on the control panel.

Tip: The Cut buttons tallies when a key is on. Red when the key is on-air or blue when it is on for an ME or MiniME™ that isn't on-air.



Transition Buttons

The transition buttons allow you to select what is included in the next transition, what type of transition is to be performed, and perform the transition. These buttons function similarly to the buttons in the Transition Area on the control panel.



To Perform a Transition

1. Click the **ME 3** button and select the ME or MiniME™ that you want to perform the transition on.
2. Click the **BKGD** and **Key** button over the Preview box to select what to include in the next transition.
3. Click **Diss**, **Wipe**, **DVE**, or **MW** to select the type of transition to perform.

Tip: Live Assist will follow the selection to allow you to set the transition parameters.

4. Click **Auto** to perform the transition, or **Cut** to perform a cut transition.

Custom Control Button Setup


When you assign a custom control to a button, you can give that button a unique name and assign an icon to it. The images for the icons must be on a USB drive in the frame when you assign them. Once assigned the icons are stored in the frame and the USB can be removed. Each of the tabs can be named.

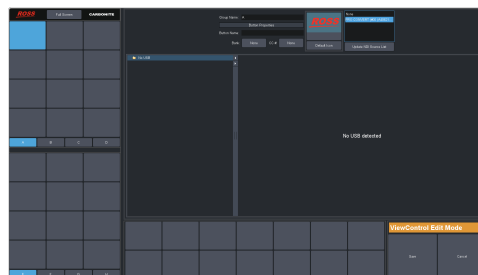
The configuration of the tabs and custom control assignment to buttons are stored with the switcher personality settings.

To Set up the Custom Control Buttons

You must assign custom controls from the switcher to the buttons on ViewControl.

If you want to assign icons to the custom control buttons, you must have the images you want to use for the icons stored on a USB drive installed in the frame. After the images have been assigned you can remove the USB drive.

1. Click the  button.



2. Press the custom control button that you want to set up.
3. Enter a name for the button in the **Button Name** field.

Tip: You can change the name of a tab by selecting a button on the tab and then entering a new name in the **Group Name** field.

4. Click the **Bank** button and select the number of the bank you want to select a custom control from.
5. Click the **CC X** button and select the number of the custom control you want to assign to the button.
6. Navigate the files on the USB drive and click the image you want to assign as the icon for the button.

Tip: Press **Default Icon** to switch back to the default icon.

7. Set up additional custom control buttons as required.
8. Press **Save** when you are done setting up custom control buttons.

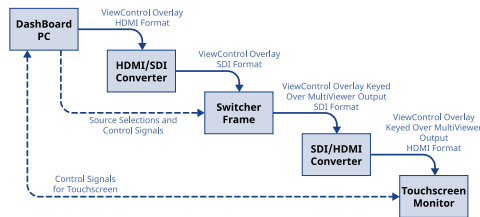
ViewControl Setup

ViewControl can be set up to use either and external HDMI™ converter or a direct NDI® stream. The NDI® stream is only supported on specific MultiViewer layouts.

Connecting ViewControl over HDMI™

ViewControl combines an overlay image from DashBoard with a custom MultiViewer output from the switcher to generate the interface. This requires some external SDI/HDMI video conversion equipment, as well as a touchscreen display.

Note: An input FSFC should be applied to the input you are using for ViewControl.



The following connections are required for ViewControl:

- ViewControl is only supported in 1080p, 1080i, or 720p. The switcher must be operating in one of these formats for ViewControl to operate.
- Set the output resolution of the DashBoard computer to either 1920×1080 or 1280×720.
- Use an HDMI to SDI converter to take the output of the DashBoard computer and put it into a resolution that the switcher can use. Ensure that the resolution is not changed.
- Apply a FSFC to the input that is coming from the DashBoard computer.
- Set up a MultiViewer to use a ViewControl layout.
- Use an SDI to HDMI converter to take the output of the switcher and put it into a resolution that the touchscreen monitor can use. Ensure that the resolution is not changed.
- Connect the USB cable for the touchscreen to the DashBoard computer.

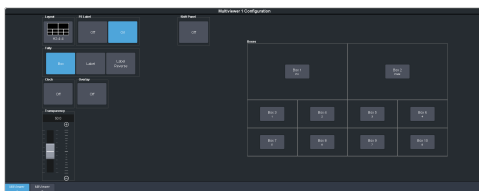
To Set Up the MultiViewer for ViewControl over HDMI™

ViewControl integrates the MultiViewer output of the switcher with a graphical overlay from DashBoard to provide live video in the ViewControl windows. The MultiViewer must be configured to properly align the video for the buttons on ViewControl.

Note: The switcher must be operating in a 1080p, 1080i, or 720p video format for ViewControl to operate.

Note: Only the Video Processor MultiViewer can be used for ViewControl.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > MultiViewers** and click **MltViewer 1**.



2. Click the **Layout** button and select a ViewControl layout.

- **VCtrlT** — (**ViewControl Top**) places the boxes at the top of the screen.
- **VCtrlB** — (**ViewControl Bottom**) places the boxes at the bottom of the screen.

Tip: If you want to create a custom ViewControl layout, you can use one of the other MultiViewer layouts to create the look you want, and use PanelBuilder in DashBoard to assign functionality to the layout. Sources can be hidden from a layout by assigning black to the box. For more information on PanelBuilder, refer to the DashBoard documentation.

3. Click the **Overlay** button and click **On** to turn the overlay on.
4. Click the **Source** button for the overlay input from DashBoard. This is keyed over the MultiViewer layout.
5. Use the **Clip** slider to adjust the clipping of the overlay source.
At **0%** the overlay source is completely opaque, and at **100%** it is completely transparent.
6. Click on one of the **Boxes** buttons and set up how that box appears on the MultiViewer.
7. Click on the source you want to select for the box.

Note: The large box on the left should always be assigned to **PV** and the large box on the right assigned to **PGM**.

MultiPanel

Each frame supports up to 4 independent control connections (Main, Satellite 1, Satellite 2, and Satellite 3/SoftPanel). Each connection can be from a control panel, DashBoard, or a combination of the two. Add devices on the same control connection mirror each other.

The independent control connections are selected by the port you connect to on the frame. Multiple panels and DashBoard connections can connect on the same port, but they will all share the same permissions and mirror each other for control.

- **Main Panel** — 5253
- **Satellite 1** — 5255
- **Satellite 2** — 5256
- **Satellite 3/SoftPanel** — 5257

Keep the following in mind:

Keep the following in mind when working with MultiPanel:

- SoftPanel shares the permissions of the Main Panel.
- The assignment of the panel ID is done from the control panel.
- Control panel specific personality settings are stored on the frame for the panel ID and are not tied to the control panel.
- DashBoard automatically follows the main panel but will ignore permissions set for the main panel.
- If you change switcher modes, the MultiPanel permissions may have to be set again.
- An undo of a memory recall ignores panel permissions and will undo the last memory recalled from any panel.
- Bus maps are specific to each control panel. Creating or updating a bus map for one control panel does not change the bus map on another control panel.
- Custom controls ignore control panel permissions and will run events on an ME, MiniME™, or MultiScreen that the control panel does not have permission for.

To Set Up MultiPanel Permissions

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > System > MultiPanel**.



2. Click a **Main**, **Sat 1**, or **Sat 2** button to select whether that control connection has access to that resource.

Note: SoftPanel and Main share the same permissions.

Note: A control panel must have permission to at least one ME, MiniME™, or MultiScreen.

Frame Cards

All the functional cards and power supplies in the Carbonite eXtreme frame can be removed and replaced if required. Although the cards are hot-swappable, any video sources or resources provided by a card are lost when the card is removed.



CAUTION: When the frame is energized, Hazardous Energy Levels are present on the chassis midplane where I/O card resettable fuses make contact with the 15V DC supply bus. Hazardous Energy Sources can cause fire or serious burns under short circuit conditions. Access to the inside chassis areas must be restricted to service personnel only, by use of the chassis door screw. The screw should be engaged to limit access to the inside chassis without a tool.



CAUTION: Servicing within the chassis while energized should be limited to module card or supply installation, or defect replacement. Installation of the cards should be carried at the front of the enclosure and care should be taken to avoid any card or user contact with the resettable fuses on the chassis's midplane. All other service or repair should be carried out off-line with the chassis in a de-energized state.

Note: You must install the rear module in the slot before you install the card.

Card	Description
Input Card (9807-5004)	Each input card provides the video resources for the eight BNC connectors on the left or right side of the rear module.
Output Card (9807-5003)	Each output card provides the video resources for the eight BNC connectors on the left or right side of the rear module.
Controller Card (2500AR-003A)	The controller cards provide two looping reference connectors, two T-Bus connectors, and two USB ports; as well as the alarm GPI. The T-Bus connectors provide the interface to Ross Routing Systems components, such as the RCP-NK1 Remote Control Panel and the NK-IPS Network Bridge. The GPI Alarm is not implemented at this time.

Card	Description
Ethernet Interface Card (4803AR-070A) and GPIO/Tally Card (4803AR-072A)	The interface card provides the communications ports for the control panel and Breakout panel; as well as two Ethernet ports.
Switcher/Crosspoint Card (4803AR-001A)	The switcher/crosspoint card provides the video switching and device communications for the switcher.

Rear Modules

>Rear modules install into the back of the frame and provide the physical connectors for two input or output cards.

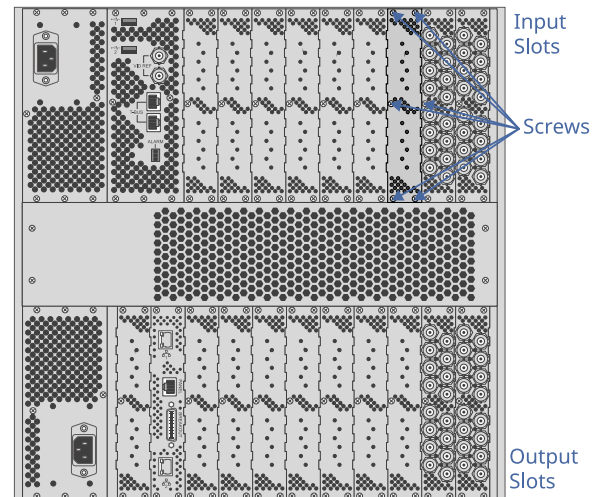
To Install a Rear Module



Important: Only qualified service personnel are allowed to replace or service system boards and/or cards.

Note: There are different input and output rear modules. Ensure that you are installing the correct module. Input rear modules are installed in the top slots and output rear modules are installed in the bottom slots.

1. Locate the rear module, or blank plate, that you want to remove.
2. Remove the six (6) screws securing the rear module to the frame and remove the old rear module.



3. Align the connectors on the back of the new rear module to the connectors on the midplane at the back of the frame and insert the rear module into the slot.

4. Re-install the six screws into the new rear module to secure it in position.

Input/Output Cards

The input and output cards install into the front of the frame and provide the video resources for the input/output matrix. Each rear module can support up to two input or output cards.

Note: The controller and interface cards install into the frame in the same way as the input and output cards.

To Install or Remove a Card

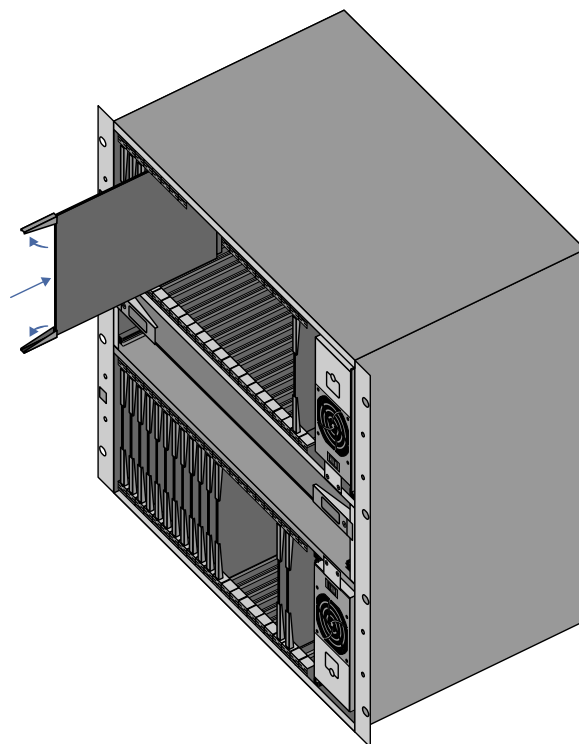


Important: Only qualified service personnel are allowed to replace or service system boards and/or cards.

Note: There are different input and output cards. Ensure that you are installing the correct card. Input cards are installed in the top slots and output cards are installed in the bottom slots.

To remove a card, follow the same procedure in reverse.

1. Locate slot at the front of the frame that you want to install a card into. A rear module must be installed into the slot before you can install the card. Each rear module provides connections for two cards.
2. Orient the new card so that the component side is towards the power supplies.
3. Rotate the ejector tabs on the card out.



4. Align the card to the top and bottom guide rails and insert the card into the slot until it is firmly seated.



Important: Do not use excessive force to seat the card. If the card does not fit into the slot, check the alignment of the card and the rear module.

5. Rotate the ejector tabs in, towards the front of the card, to lock the card into the slot.

Power Supplies

The frame supports up to two 500 W power supplies providing full redundancy. If one power supply fails, the other provides enough power to support the entire frame.

To Install or Remove a Power Supply

Both the primary and redundant power supplies install in the same way, and are both located inside the frame. To remove a power supply, follow the same procedure in reverse.

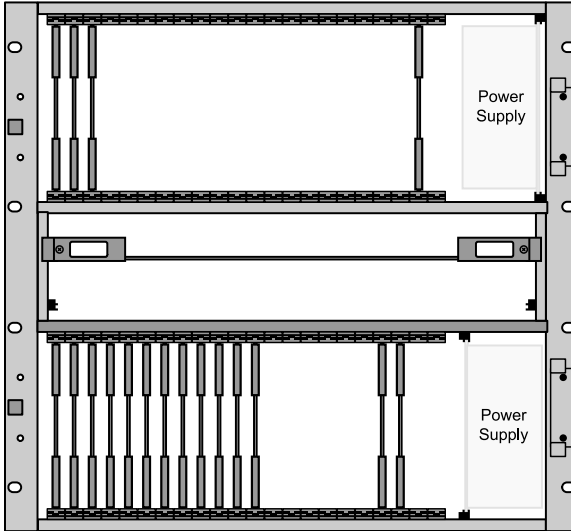


DANGER: Hazardous voltages are present within the power supply for a short period of time after removal from the frame. The power supply cover is intended to protect the user from access to these areas, and should not be removed. Ross Video power supplies are intended to be factory serviced by qualified Ross Video service personnel only.

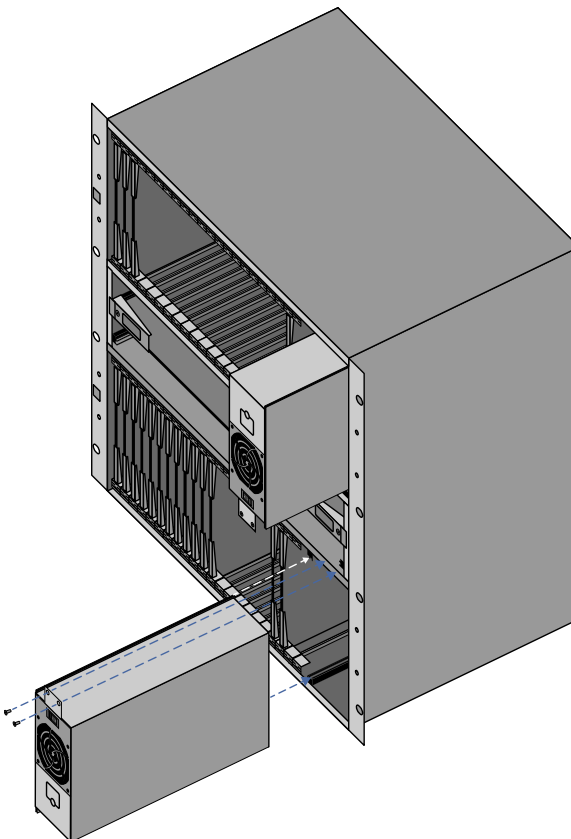


Important: Only qualified service personnel are allowed to replace or service system boards and/or cards.

1. Ensure that the power switch on the power supply is turned off.
2. Locate the power supply slot that you want to install a power supply into.



3. Align the edges of the power supply guides to the guide rails in the frame.



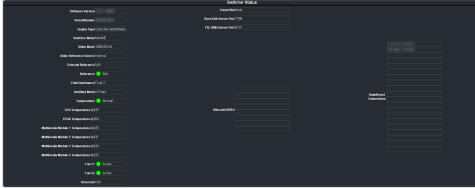
4. Slide the power supply into the slot until it is firmly seated.
5. Install the two retaining screws to secure the power supply in the frame.
6. Turn the power switch on the power supply on.

Diagnostics

Switcher status menus and error conditions, installed options, calibration, diagnostics, and logs.

Switcher Status

The status menu shows information for various components of the frame.



- **Software Version** — the current version of the software running on the switcher.
- **Serial Number (Video Processor)** — the serial number of the video processor board.

Note: If you are asked for the Serial Number of your frame, it can be found on a label affixed to the chassis. The Video Processor Serial Number is used to identify the video processor board that is installed in the frame.

- **Engine Type** — the model of frame.
- **Switcher Mode** — the current mode the switcher is operating in.
- **Video Mode** — the video format that the switcher is operating in.
- **Video Reference Source** — the source of video reference to the switcher (internal/external).
- **External Reference** — the video format of the external reference, if connected.
- **Reference** — status of whether the switcher has locked to the reference format.
- **Field Dominance** — the switching field.
- **Ancillary Mode** — how ancillary data is handled (strip or pass).
- **Temperature** — status of the ambient temperature in the frame.
- **CPU Temperature (C)** — the temperature of the frame CPU in degrees Celsius.
- **FPGA Temperature (C)** — the temperature of the frame video processor FPGA in degrees Celsius.
- **Fan #1** — speed and status of fan 1 in the frame.
- **Fan #2** — speed and status of fan 2 in the frame.
- **Timecode** — the current timecode being received by the switcher.

- **Panel Slot** — the control connection the DashBoard interface is using (Main/Satellite).
- **RossTalk Server Port** — the network port that the switcher is listening on for RossTalk commands.
- **TSL UMD Server Port** — the network port that the switcher is listening on for TSL UMD commands.
- **Allocated DVEs** — where DVE channels are allocated in the switcher.
- **DashBoard Connections** — the IP addresses of all the DashBoard connections to the switcher, including panels. The port number after the IP address indicates the role each DashBoard connection is filling. Refer to [MultiPanel](#) on page 99 for more information.

Switcher Logs

Switcher logs can be used to identify and diagnose problems with the switcher. Use this information when contacting Ross Video Technical Support.



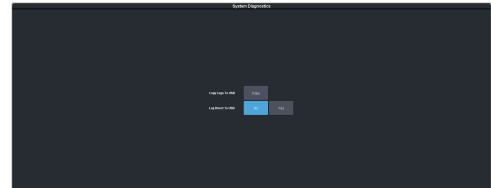
Notice: By downloading and sending Logs to Ross Video you are consenting to share this information with qualified Ross Video personnel. Refer to [Ross Video Switchers Privacy Notice](#) on page iii for more information on the Ross Video Privacy Policy, or visit rossvideo.com/privacy-policy/.

To Copy Logs To a USB

Switcher logs can be stored onto a USB to be sent to technical support to diagnose problems with your switcher.

Note: Logs must be copied before a reboot or power-cycle of the switcher, or the information in them will be lost.

1. Insert USB drive into the USB port on the frame. Wait 5 seconds after inserting the USB drive before using it.
2. Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > Diagnostics**.



3. Click the **Copy Logs To USB** button to copy the switcher logs to the USB drive.

Tip: You can have logs stored directly to the USB drive. Click a **Logs Direct to USB** button to select **Yes**.

The logs have been copied into the \switcher directory on the USB drive.

Diagnostics

Diagnostics consist of a number of tests that are used to confirm the functionality of your equipment.

Frame DIP Switches

There are a number of DIP switches inside the frame that are used to diagnose the operation of the switcher.

Table 7: Carbonite eXtreme Frame DIP Switches

DIP	Description
8	This DIP switch forces a RAM test every time the switcher is powered on. It is in the up (off) position by default.
7	This DIP switch is unused and should be left in the default up (off) position.
6	This DIP switch is used to set the IP address of ethernet port on the frame to the default value (192.168.0.123). It must be in the up (off) position to set another IP address for the frame.
5	This DIP switch prevents software upgrades. It must be in the up (off) position to upgrade the switcher.
4	This DIP switch is unused and should be left in the default up (off) position.
3	This DIP switch is unused and should be left in the default up (off) position.
2	This DIP switch is unused and should be left in the default up (off) position.
1	This DIP switch is unused and should be left in the default up (off) position.

To Run the Tally Test

The Tally Test turns all tallies off, and then turns each tally on consecutively. There is a three (3) second delay between each tally being toggled on. Once the last tally has been turned on, all the tallies blink on and off three times.



Important: A control panel is required to perform this procedure. If you do not have access to a physical control panel, the SoftPanel can be used. The position of items on the menus on the SoftPanel may not match those of a physical panel.

1. Press **MENU > System > NEXT > NEXT > Diagnostic Tests (Diag Tests on Carbonite Black) > NEXT > NEXT > Tally Test.**

All tallies are turned off, and then each tally is turned on consecutively. There is a three (3) second delay between each tally being toggled on. Once the last tally has been turned on, all the tallies blink on and off three times.

2. Press **MENU** to end the test.

To Run the GPI Input Test



Important: A control panel is required to perform this procedure. If you do not have access to a physical control panel, the SoftPanel can be used. The position of items on the menus on the SoftPanel may not match those of a physical panel.

1. Press **MENU > System > NEXT > NEXT > Diagnostic Tests (Diag Tests on Carbonite Black) > NEXT > NEXT > GPI Test.** The second line of the menu show the state of all GPI input pins as High or Low.
2. Press **MENU** to end the test.

To Run the GPI Output Test



Important: A control panel is required to perform this procedure. If you do not have access to a physical control panel, the SoftPanel can be used. The position of items on the menus on the SoftPanel may not match those of a physical panel.

1. Press **MENU > System > NEXT > NEXT > Diagnostic Tests (Diag Tests on Carbonite Black) > NEXT > NEXT > GPO Test.** All GPI outputs are turned off, and then each one is turned on consecutively. There is a three (3) second delay between each GPI output being triggered. Once the last tally has been triggered, all the GPI outputs blink on and off three times.
2. Press **MENU** to end the test.

Error Messages

The switcher will show an error message on the control panel display when a problem is detected.

The following error messages may appear on the control panel display when starting your switcher.

Table 8: Switcher Error Messages

Error	Description	Solution
DDR 0 Not Found; DDR 1 Not Found; or DDR 0 & 1 Not Found	There is a problem with the switcher DDR memory. The switcher may be used but many features will be limited or disabled.	Re-start your switcher. If the problem persists, contact Ross Video Technical Support for assistance.
Panel/Frame Mismatch	Your switcher control panel is connected to the wrong frame type.	Connect your switcher control panel to the proper frame and re-start the switcher.
Upgrade PMC?	Your switcher requires a Panel Module Controller (PMC) upgrade as part of a software upgrade. The switcher may be used without the PMC upgrade but may respond in an unpredictable manner.	Allow the PMC upgrade to proceed. Contact Ross Video Technical Support for assistance if you are unsure about upgrading your switcher.
Unknown panel type Please upgrade	The frame does not recognise the control panel. This could be caused by an unsupported panel being connected to the frame, or a problem with the panel module controlled or the configuration files.	Ensure that you have the correct control panel connected to the frame. If the problem persists, download the latest upgrade file from and force an upgrade of the switcher. Contact Ross Video Technical Support for assistance if you are unsure about upgrading your switcher.

Switcher Reset

If required, the switcher can be reset to return it to a user-defined default setting (RState), or the factory default state. A reset can be performed for the entire switcher, or individual components, such as keys.

Custom Reset Settings (RState)

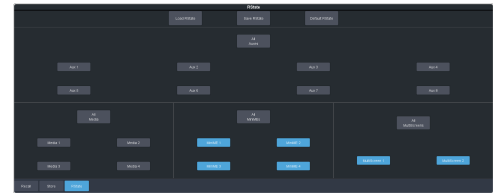
You can customize many of the default switcher parameters and save them as a user-defined reset settings. These custom reset settings can then be recalled when you want to return the switcher to a previous state.

To Save a Custom Reset Setting

The Custom Reset Setting, or RState, saves how you want the switcher to be configured when it

powers up, or when you recall the RState manually.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Live Assist > Memory > RState**.



2. Click **AuxX, MediaX, MiniMEX, and MultiScreenX** to select the buses or channels that are reset with a switcher reset.

Tip: Click the **All** button to select or de-select all the items in that category.

3. Click **Save RState** and **Yes**.

To Load a Custom Reset Setting (RState)

The Custom Reset Setting, or RState, is recalled every time the switcher is powered on, or it can be recalled manually.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Live Assist > Memory > RState**.
2. Click **Load RState** and **Yes**.

Tip: Click **Default RState** to load the default RState settings.

Factory Default Settings

You can restore all or part of the switcher to the factory default state. A factory default returns all installation and personality settings are reset.

To Factory Reset the Switcher

Return the switcher to the factory default settings.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > System > Reset**.



2. Click a reset or clear button to return that feature to the factory default state.
 - **Clear Memories** — clear all memory registers on the switcher.
 - **Clear CCs** — clear all custom controls on the switcher.

-
- **Default Bus Map** — return the bus map to the default mapping.
 - **Factory Reset** — return the installation and personality registers to the default settings.

Specifications

Switcher resources, video specifications, power rating, and port pinouts.

Carbonite Resources

The number of resources specific to your switcher depends on the options installed.

Resource	Carbonite	Carbonite+ Carbonite MultiMedia
2D DVE Channels per ME (Max/Min) ¹	8/4	
Aux Buses	8	
Chroma Keys per ME	2 (floating)	
Custom Controls	256 (8 Banks × 32 CCs)	
Max Events per CC	998	
FSFCs (Max/Min) ¹	6/0	24
GPI I/Os	34	
Keyers per ME	4	
Matte Generators per ME	2	
Media-Store Channels	4	
Media-Store CACHE	8 GB	
Memories per ME	100	
MEs (max)	2	
MiniME™ Engines	4	
MultiScreen Generators	2 ²	
MultiViewer Boxes	16	
MultiViewer Layouts	39	
MultiViewer Outputs	2	
Pattern Generators per ME	2	
Tallies	34	
SDI Video Inputs	24	
SDI Video Outputs	10	
Frame IP	192.168.0.123	
Panel/CarboNET IP	192.168.0.129	

Notes:

¹ The number of DVE channels and FSFCs that are available depends on the switcher mode you are in. This table assumes that all options are installed.

² Each MultiScreen consumes MiniME™ engines to generate the output. The number of MultiScreen outputs that are available depends

on the number of MiniME™ engines that are available.

Environmental Characteristics

All Switchers	
Ambient Temperature Range	Operating: 0 - 40°C (32 - 104°F) Storage: -20 - 85°C (-4 - 185°F)
Frame Cooling	Active, Front-to-Back airflow

Video Input Specifications

Input Specification	Value
Equalization (using Belden 1694 cable)	>50m @ 3Gb/s
	>100m @ 1.5 Gb/s
	>300m @ 270 Mb/s (5°-40°C)
Impedance	75 ohm, terminating
Video Inputs, SDI	SMPTE 259M/292M/424M (non-looping)
Reference Inputs (non-terminating, looping)	Standard Definition — analog black
	High Definition — tri-level sync

Video Output Specifications

Output Specification	Value
Return Loss	<-23dB @ 1.5GHz
	<-18dB @ 3GHz
Rise and Fall Time	800ps ±10% (SD)
	240ps ±10% (HD)
Signal Level	800mV ±10%
DC Offset	0 Volts
Overshoot	<10%
Video Outputs, SDI HD Mode	10-bit SMPTE-292M/424M serial digital

Audio Specifications

Specification	Value
Audio Depth	24-bit AES3 in HD (20-bit in SD)
Channels	8 Stereo Pairs (16 channels)
Output	AES

Specification	Value
File Format	Multi-channel Waveform Audio File (.wav)
Sample Rate	48kHz
Synchronization	Locked to Video

Jitter

Specification	Value
HD - Tri-Level Sync	Alignment (> 100KHz) < 0.2UI
	Timing (<10Hz) < 1.0UI
HD - Composite Reference	Performance not guaranteed with composite reference
SD - Tri-Level Sync	Alignment (> 1KHz) < 0.2UI
	Timing (<10Hz) < 0.2UI
SD - Composite Reference	Alignment (> 1KHz) < 0.2UI
	Timing (<10Hz) < 0.5UI

System Timing

- All video inputs zero time relative to reference input, auto timing will correct for inputs out of time by up to +/- 0.25 line.
- System delay is less than 1 line.

Network Ports

The following network ports are used:

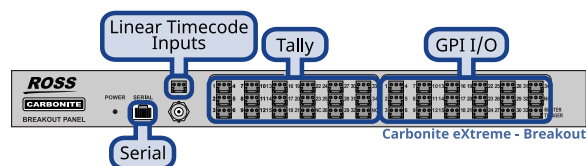
- Dashboard Main — 5253
- Dashboard Sat 1 — 5255
- Dashboard Sat 2 — 5256
- Dashboard SoftPanel — 5257
- FTP — 21
- SFTP — 2222
- RossTalk — 7788
- SLP — 427
- SSH — 22
- TFTP — 69
- TSL 3.1 (TCP, Carbonite) — 5727
- TSL 3.1 (TCP, Ultrix™) — 5727
- TSL 3.1 (UDP, Ultrix™) — 4490
- TSL 5.0 (TCP, Carbonite) — 5728
- TSL 5.0 (TCP, Ultrix™) — 5729
- TSL 5.0 (UDP, Ultrix™) — 4492
- Web Server 1 — 80
- Server — 5254

Power Consumption

Table 9: Carbonite eXtreme

Graphite	
Consumption	500W 34A 14.6V
Input Voltage	100 - 120V~, 220 - 240V~, 47-63Hz, 1.6A

Ports



Serial Port

The serial port supports the RS-422 transmission standard in the following format:

- 38.4k Baud
- 8 bits
- 1 stop bit
- Odd Parity

The serial ports use a DB9 female connector.

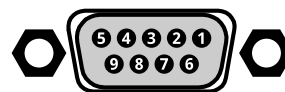


Table 10: Serial Port Pinouts

Pin	Signal
1	Tx+
2	Tx-
3	Rx+
4	n/c
5	n/c
6	Rx-
7	Ground
8	Ground

GPI Port

The switcher supports 34 GPI I/Os on a DB37 female connector.

For Carbonite eXtreme the GPI I/O connectors are on the breakout panel. The center pin of each connector is common (ground).

Tally Port

The switcher supports 34 fixed tallies on a female DB37 connector.



Table 11: Tally Rating

Specification	Value
Input Voltage	24VAC(rms)/40VDC
Maximum Current	120mA
Impedance	<15 ohm

For Carbonite eXtreme the tally connectors are on the breakout panel. The center pin of each connector is common (ground).

Note: The tally pin must be connected to the proper common to complete the circuit. For example, tally 6 on pin 7 must be connected to the common on pin 31.

Table 12: Tally Pinouts

Pin	Tally #
1	Common (pins 2-6, 20-25)
2	1
3	2
4	3
5	4
6	5
7	6
8	7
9	8
10	9
11	10
12	11
13	12
14	13
15	14
16	15
17	16
18	17
19	Common (pins 13-18, 32-37)
20	18
21	19
22	20

Pin	Tally #
23	21
24	22
25	23
26	24
27	25
28	26
29	27
30	28
31	Common (pins 7-12, 26-30)
32	29
33	30
34	31
35	32
36	33
37	34

LTC Port

For Carbonite eXtreme the GPI I/O connectors are on the breakout panel. The center pin of each connector is common (ground).

USB Port

The USB port is located at the front of the frame and is primarily intended for upgrades and storing media items and switcher sets.

Connector — USB 2.0, Type-A, 10 W (5 V @ 2 A)

Custom Control Events

The Custom Control editor in DashBoard allows you to add or edit events in custom controls.

Event	Location	Description
Ancillary Data Mode	Switcher Installation > Ancillary Mode	<p>Select how the switcher will strip or pass ancillary data.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click a Value button to select how the switcher treats ancillary data.
Audio Mixer Pan	Devices > Audio Mixer	<p>Set the pan level for the selected channel on the selected device.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click Audio Pan. 2. Click the Audio Mixer button and select the device you want to send the command to. 3. Click the Channel button and select the channel you want to send the command to. 4. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 5. Enter the new pan level in the Pan Left/Right (%) field.
Audio Mixer Volume	Devices > Audio Mixer	<p>Set the level for the selected channel on the selected device.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click Audio Volume. 2. Click the Audio Mixer button and select the device you want to send the command to. 3. Click the Channel button and select the channel you want to send the command to. 4. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 5. Enter the new audio level in the Volume (%) field.
Auto Trans	Switcher > Transition > ME Trans Action	<p>Performs an auto transition on the selected area.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button and select the area that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Action button and select Auto Trans.
Bus Source Select	Switcher > Bus Source Select	<p>Select a source on the selected bus for the selected area.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button and select the area that you want to select a bus on. 2. Click the Bus/Keyer button and select the bus that you want to select a source on. 3. If you selected a key bus, click a Bus button to select whether you are selecting a source for the fill (Video) or the alpha (Alpha) of the key. 4. Click the Source button and select the source that you want on the selected bus.
Cancel All CC	Special > Cancel All	Cancel all running custom controls.
Cancel CC	Special > Cancel CC	<p>Cancel a running custom control.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the Bank button and select the custom control bank you want to cancel a custom control on. 2. Click the CC button and select the custom control you want to cancel.

Event	Location	Description
Chroma Key, Initialize	Switcher > Keyer > Chroma Keyer Init	Initialize a chroma key for the selected key for the selected area. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button and select the area that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Keyer button for the key you want to perform the event on.
Chroma Key Color	Switcher > Keyer > Chroma Keyer Color	Select the color you want to key out for the selected key for the selected area. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button and select the area that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Keyer button for the key you want to perform the event on. 3. Click Color and select the color you want to key out.
Chroma Key Mode	Switcher > Keyer > Chroma Keyer Mode	Select the mode for a chroma key for the selected key for the selected area. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button and select the area that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Keyer button for the key you want to perform the event on. 3. Click a Mode button to select whether you want the chroma key to operate in basic mode (Basic), or advanced (Advanced).
Chroma Key Setup	Switcher > Keyer > Chroma Keyer Param	Select the various advanced chroma key settings for the selected key for the selected area. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button and select the area that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Keyer button for the key you want to perform the event on. 3. Click the Parameter button and select the parameter you want to adjust. 4. Click the Value button and select the new value you want to enter for the selected parameter.
Clean Feed	Switcher Installation > ME > ME Clean Feed	Select the clean feed location for the selected ME. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the ME that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click a Before Keyer button to select whether you want the clean feed output to be taken before key 1 (Keyer 1), key 2 (Keyer 2), or key 3 (Keyer 3).
Color Framing	Switcher Installation > Reference > Color Framing	Select whether color framing for the reference outputs is synchronized. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click a Framing button to select whether color framing is synchronized (Sync) or not (NoSync).
Cut	Switcher > Transition > ME Trans Action	Performs a cut on the selected ME. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button and select the area that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Action button and select Cut.

Event	Location	Description
DVE Freeze	Switcher > Keyer > DVE Freeze	<p>Turn the DVE freeze feature on or off for the selected key for the selected ME, MiniME™, or MultiScreen.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button and select the area that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Keyer button for the key you want to perform the event on. 3. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 4. Click the Value button and select whether to freeze the video and appearance of a key (On) or not (Off). When a key is frozen, the DVE attribute are disabled and you can not move the key.
DVE Key Aspect	Switcher > Keyer > DVE Param	<p>Select the aspect ratio for the DVE key on the selected key for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the ME that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Keyer button for the key you want to perform the event on. 3. Click the Parameter button and select Aspect. 4. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 5. Enter an aspect ratio in the Value (%) field.
DVE Key Border Color (HSL)	Switcher > Keyer > DVE Border Color (HSL)	<p>Select the custom color you want to apply to the border of the DVE key of the selected area. Each component of the HSL color must be inserted individually.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button and select the area that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Keyer button for the key you want to perform the event on. 3. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 4. Click the Component button and select the HSL component you want to assign a value to. A value should be applied to all three components. 5. Enter a value for the selected component in the Value (%) field.
DVE Key Border Color (Preset)	Switcher > Keyer > DVE Border Color (Preset)	<p>Select the preset color you want to apply to the border of the DVE key of the selected key for the selected area.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button and select the area that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Keyer button for the key you want to perform the event on. 3. Click the Color button and select the preset color you want to apply to the border.

Event	Location	Description
DVE Key Border	Switcher > Keyer > DVE Param	<p>Select the size of border for the DVE key on the selected key for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the ME that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Keyer button for the key you want to perform the event on. 3. Click the Parameter button and select Border. 4. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 5. Enter a size for the border in the Value (%) field.
DVE Key Crop (Bottom Edge)	Switcher > Keyer > DVE Param	<p>Select the amount of cropping on the bottom edge of the DVE key on the selected key for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the ME that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Keyer button for the key you want to perform the event on. 3. Click the Parameter button and select Bottom Edge. 4. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 5. Enter the amount of cropping in the Value (%) field.
DVE Key Crop (Dual Edge)	Switcher > Keyer > DVE Crop Param	<p>Select the amount of cropping on both horizontal or vertical edges of the DVE key of the selected key for the selected area.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button and select the area that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Keyer button for the key you want to perform the event on. 3. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 4. Click the Parameter button and select the edges you want to crop. 5. Enter the amount of Left or Top cropping you want to apply in the Value % field. 6. Enter the amount of Right or Bottom cropping you want to apply in the Other Value % field.
DVE Key Crop (Left Edge)	Switcher > Keyer > DVE Param	<p>Select the amount of cropping on the left edge of the DVE key on the selected key for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the ME that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Keyer button for the key you want to perform the event on. 3. Click the Parameter button and select Left Edge. 4. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 5. Enter the amount of cropping in the Value (%) field.

Event	Location	Description
DVE Key Crop (Right Edge)	Switcher > Keyer > DVE Param	<p>Select the amount of cropping on the right edge of the DVE key on the selected key for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the ME that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Keyer button for the key you want to perform the event on. 3. Click the Parameter button and select Right Edge. 4. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 5. Enter the amount of cropping in the Value (%) field.
DVE Key Crop (Top Edge)	Switcher > Keyer > DVE Param	<p>Select the amount of cropping on the top edge of the DVE key on the selected key for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the ME that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Keyer button for the key you want to perform the event on. 3. Click the Parameter button and select Top Edge. 4. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 5. Enter the amount of cropping in the Value (%) field.
DVE Key Edge Softness	Switcher > Keyer > DVE Param	<p>Select the amount of softness to apply to the edge of the DVE key on the selected key for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the ME that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Keyer button for the key you want to perform the event on. 3. Click the Parameter button and select Softness. 4. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 5. Enter an amount of softness for the DVE key or border in the Value (%) field.
DVE Key Size	Switcher > Keyer > DVE Param	<p>Select the size of the DVE key on the selected key for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the ME that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Keyer button for the key you want to perform the event on. 3. Click the Parameter button and select Size. 4. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 5. Enter a new size in the Value (%) field.

Event	Location	Description
DVE Key X-Position	Switcher > Keyer > DVE Param	<p>Select the x-axis position of the DVE key on the selected key for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the ME that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Keyer button for the key you want to perform the event on. 3. Click the Parameter button and select X-Pos. 4. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 5. Enter a new position in the Value (%) field.
DVE Key Y-Position	Switcher > Keyer > DVE Param	<p>Select the y-axis position for the DVE key on the selected key for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the ME that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Keyer button for the key you want to perform the event on. 3. Click the Parameter button and select Y-Pos. 4. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 5. Enter a new position in the Value (%) field.
DVE Wipe, Reset	Switcher > Transition > DVE Wipe Reset	<p>Reset the parameters or direction and flip-flop for the DVE wipe transition of the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the ME that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click Reset to reset the DVE wipe parameters.
DVE Wipe Direction (Flip-Flop)	Switcher > Transition > DVE Wipe Direction	<p>Select whether the DVE wipe reverses direction for every second transition of the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the ME that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 3. Click Flip-Flip. 4. Click On or Off to select whether Flip-Flop is on (On) or not (Off).
DVE Wipe Direction	Switcher > Transition > DVE Wipe Direction	<p>Select the direction for the DVE wipe transition of the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the ME that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 3. Click Direction. 4. Click Forward or Reverse to select whether the DVE wipe moves in a forward (Forward) or reverse (Reverse) direction.

Event	Location	Description
DVE Wipe Pattern	Switcher > Transition > DVE Wipe Effect	<p>Select the pattern you want to use for a DVE wipe transition of the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the ME that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Effect button and select the pattern you want to use for the DVE wipe.
EmbeddedTriggers — Enable	Switcher Installation > Embedded Trigger > Enable	<p>Select whether EmbeddedTriggers is enabled or not for the selected output.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the Output button and select the output BNC that you want to send EmbeddedTriggers commands on. 2. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 3. Click a Value button to select whether EmbeddedTriggers commands are inserted for the selected output (On) or not (Off).
EmbeddedTriggers — Insert Trigger	Switcher Installation > Embedded Trigger > Trigger CC	<p>Select the custom control to insert into the EmbeddedTriggers message.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Enter the custom control bank in the Bank field. 2. Enter the custom control in the CC field.
EmbeddedTriggers — Set DID	Switcher Installation > Embedded Trigger > Settings	<p>Select the data identifier word (DID) you want to use for the EmbeddedTriggers message.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click DID 2. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 3. Enter the DID value you want to use in the Value field.
EmbeddedTriggers — Set Line	Switcher Installation > Embedded Trigger > Settings	<p>Select the line in the VANC that the EmbeddedTriggers message will be inserted on.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click Line 2. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 3. Enter the line value you want to use in the Value field.
EmbeddedTriggers — Set Remote ID	Switcher Installation > Embedded Trigger > Settings	<p>Select the remote ID you want to use to identify the switcher that the EmbeddedTriggers message is coming from.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click Remote ID 2. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 3. Enter the remote ID value you want to use in the Value field.
EmbeddedTriggers — Set SDID	Switcher Installation > Embedded Trigger > Settings	<p>Select the secondary data identifier word (SDID) you want to use for the EmbeddedTriggers message.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click SDID 2. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 3. Enter the SDID value you want to use in the Value field.

Event	Location	Description
Fly Key (DVE)	Switcher > Keyer > Keyer Fly	<p>Assign DVE resources (Fly) to the selected key for the selected area.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button and select the area that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Keyer button for the key you want to perform the event on. 3. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 4. Click the Value button and select whether DVE resources are assigned to the key (On) or not (Off).
GPI Output — Edge Trigger Setup	Devices > GPO	<p>Set up the type of edge trigger for the GPI output.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click GPO Edge Duration 2. Click the GPO button and select the GPI output that you want to configure. 3. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 4. Enter the duration of the edge trigger in the Duration (fr) field.
GPI Output — Level Trigger Setup	Devices > GPO	<p>Set up the type of level trigger for the GPI output.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click GPO Level Config 2. Click the GPO button and select the GPI output that you want to configure. 3. Click a Level to select whether the level trigger uses a high (High) or low (Low) level trigger.
GPI Output — Mode	Devices > GPO	<p>Select whether the level trigger GPI output act as a tally.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click GPO Mode 2. Click the GPO button and select the GPI output that you want to configure. 3. Click a Mode button to select whether the level trigger GPI output, when assigned to video source, acts as a roll clip (Normal) or as a tally (Tally) for the selected source.
GPI Output — Trigger	Devices > GPO	<p>Trigger a GPI output.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click GPO Trigger 2. Click the GPO button and select the GPI output that you want to trigger.
GPI Output — Trigger Type	Devices > GPO	<p>Select the type of trigger for the GPI output.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click GPO Trigger Configuration 2. Click the GPO button and select the GPI output that you want to configure. 3. Click a Trigger to select whether the GPI output uses a level (Level) or edge (Edge) trigger.
Hold CC	Special > Hold	<p>Insert a hold into the custom control.</p>
Key, Make Linear	Switcher > Keyer > Keyer Make Linear	<p>Make the selected key linear on the selected area.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button and select the area that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Keyer button for the key you want to make linear.

Event	Location	Description
Key Active	Switcher > Keyer > Keyer Active	<p>Transition a key (or include it in the next transition) on or off-air for the selected area.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button and select the area that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Keyer button for the key you want to perform the event on. 3. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 4. Click the Parameter button and select a cut (Cut Key) or auto transition (Trans Key) for the key, or have to key included in the next transition (Include Key). 5. Click the Value button to select whether the key is transitioned on-air / included in the next transition to go on-air (On) or off-air / included in the next transition to go off-air (Off).
Key Copy	Switcher > Keyer > Keyer Copy	<p>Copy the contents of one key to another key the same or a different area.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the Target ME button and select where you want to copy the key to. 2. Click the Target Keyer button for the key you want to copy to. 3. Click the Source ME button and select where you want to copy the key from. 4. Click the Source Keyer button for the key you want to copy from.
Key Invert	Switcher > Keyer > Keyer Invert	<p>Turn the key invert feature on or off for the selected key for the selected area.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button and select the area that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Keyer button for the key you want to reverse the polarity of the key alpha so that the holes in the background are cut by dark areas of the key alpha instead of bright areas. 3. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 4. Click a Value button to turn key invert on (On) or off (Off).
Key Mode	Switcher > Keyer > Keyer Mode	<p>Select the mode for the selected key for the selected area.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button and select the area that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Keyer button for the key you want to perform the event on. 3. Click a Mode button to have the key set as shaped/unshaped from the key (Normal), as additive for a shaped source (Additive), or alpha to fully opaque/white (Full).
Key Only Transition	Switcher > Keyer > Keyer Trans	<p>Perform a key only transition for the selected area.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button and select the area that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Keyer button for the key you want to perform the event on. 3. Click the Action button and select whether they key should perform a cut (Cut), or auto transition (Auto Trans).

Event	Location	Description
Key Reset	Switcher > Keyer > Keyer Reset Params	Reset the parameters for the selected key for the selected area. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button and select the area that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Keyer button for the key you want to reset the clip, gain, transparency, invert, and mask for.
Key Settings (Clip, Gain, Transparency)	Switcher > Keyer > Keyer Settings	Select clip, gain, and transparency settings for the selected key for the selected area. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button and select the area that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Keyer button for the key you want to perform the event on. 3. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 4. Enter a value for the clip, gain, or transparency for the key in the Value field.
Key Swap	Switcher > Keyer > Keyer Swap	Swap the contents of one key with another key the same or a different area. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the 1st ME button and select where the first key you want to swap is. 2. Click the 1st Keyer button for the first key you want to swap. 3. Click the 2nd ME button and select where the second key you want to swap is. 4. Click the 2nd Keyer button for the second key you want to swap.
Key Trans Rate	Switcher > Keyer > Keyer Trans Rate	Set or reset the keyer transition rate of the selected area. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button and select the area that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Keyer button for the key you want to perform the event on. 3. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 4. Enter a new transition rate, in frames, for the key in the Value (fr) field.
Key Type	Switcher > Keyer > Keyer Type	Assign a key type for a key for the selected area. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button and select the area that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Keyer button for the key you want to perform the event on. 3. Click a Type button to assign the key type to the selected key.
Layer Mode	Switcher Installation > ME > ME Layer Mode	Select whether external layer mode is active for the selected ME. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the ME that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 3. Click a Value button to select whether external layer mode is on (On) or not (Off).
Loop CC	Special > Loop	Insert a loop into the custom control.

Event	Location	Description
Mask, Force	Switcher > Keyer > Mask Force	<p>Apply a mask to the selected key for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the ME that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Keyer button for the key you want to perform the event on. 3. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 4. Click the Value button and select whether to force the area inside the mask region to the foreground (On) or not (Off).
Mask, Invert	Switcher > Keyer > Mask Invert	<p>Invert the mask of the selected key for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the ME that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Keyer button for the key you want to perform the event on. 3. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 4. Click the Value button and select whether to invert the masked area with the unmasked area (On) or not (Off).
Mask, Reset	Switcher > Keyer > Mask Reset	<p>Reset the mask of the selected key for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the ME that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Keyer button for the key you want to perform the event on. 3. Click the Action button and select the parameter you want to reset. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Reset Type — turn mask off. • Reset Forced — turn force off. • Reset Inverted — turn invert off. • Reset X-Pos — reset horizontal position. • Reset Y-Pos — reset vertical position. • Reset Size — reset size. • Reset Ver Edges — reset top and bottom edges. • Reset Hor Edges — reset left and right edges.
Mask (Box) — Bottom Edge Position Mask (Box) — Bottom Edge Position	Switcher > Keyer > Box Mask Param	<p>Select the position for the bottom edge of the box mask on the selected key for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the ME that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Keyer button for the key you want to perform the event on. 3. Click the Parameter button and select Bottom Edge. 4. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 5. Enter a new position in the Value (%) field.

Event	Location	Description
Mask (Box) — Left Edge Position	Switcher > Keyer > Box Mask Param	<p>Select the position for the left edge of the box mask on the selected key for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the ME that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Keyer button for the key you want to perform the event on. 3. Click the Parameter button and select Left Edge. 4. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 5. Enter a new position in the Value (%) field.
Mask (Box) — Right Edge Position	Switcher > Keyer > Box Mask Param	<p>Select the position for the right edge of the box mask on the selected key for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the ME that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Keyer button for the key you want to perform the event on. 3. Click the Parameter button and select Right Edge. 4. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 5. Enter a new position in the Value (%) field.
Mask (Box) — Size	Switcher > Keyer > Box Mask Param	<p>Select the size of the box mask on the selected key for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the ME that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Keyer button for the key you want to perform the event on. 3. Click the Parameter button and select Size. 4. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 5. Enter a new size in the Value (%) field.
Mask (Box) — Top Edge Position	Switcher > Keyer > Box Mask Param	<p>Select the position for the top edge of the box mask on the selected key for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the ME that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Keyer button for the key you want to perform the event on. 3. Click the Parameter button and select Top Edge. 4. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 5. Enter a new position in the Value (%) field.

Event	Location	Description
Mask (Box) — X-Position	Switcher > Keyer > Box Mask Param	<p>Select the x-axis position of the box mask on the selected key for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the ME that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Keyer button for the key you want to perform the event on. 3. Click the Parameter button and select X-Pos. 4. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 5. Enter a new position in the Value (%) field.
Mask (Box) — Y-Position	Switcher > Keyer > Box Mask Param	<p>Select the y-axis position for the box mask on the selected key for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the ME that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Keyer button for the key you want to perform the event on. 3. Click the Parameter button and select Y-Pos. 4. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 5. Enter a new position in the Value (%) field.
Mask (Pattern) — Aspect Ratio	Switcher > Keyer > Pattern Mask Param	<p>Select the aspect ratio for the pattern mask for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the ME that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Parameter button and select Aspect. 3. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 4. Enter an aspect ratio in the Value (%) field.
Mask (Pattern) — Border Size	Switcher > Keyer > Pattern Mask Param	<p>Select the size of border for the pattern mask on the selected key for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the ME that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Parameter button and select Border Size. 3. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 4. Enter a size for the border in the Value (%) field.
Mask (Pattern) — Edge Softness	Switcher > Keyer > Pattern Mask Param	<p>Select the amount of softness to apply to the edge of the mask for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the ME that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Parameter button and select Softness. 3. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 4. Enter an amount of softness for the pattern or border in the Value (%) field.

Event	Location	Description
Mask (Pattern) — Horizontal Multiplication	Switcher > Keyer > Pattern Mask Param	<p>Select the number of times you want to multiply the pattern mask horizontally for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the ME that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Parameter button and select Horizontal Mult. 3. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 4. Enter the number of times the pattern is multiplied in the Value field.
Mask (Pattern) — Pattern	Switcher > Keyer > Pattern Mask Effect	<p>Select a pattern for the pattern mask for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the ME that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Pattern and select the pattern you want to use for the pattern generator.
Mask (Pattern) — Reset	Switcher > Keyer > Pattern Mask Reset	<p>Reset the mask for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the ME that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click Reset Params.
Mask (Pattern) — Rotation	Switcher > Keyer > Pattern Mask Param	<p>Select the rotation for the pattern mask for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the ME that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Parameter button and select Rotation. 3. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 4. Enter a rotation in the Value (%) field.
Mask (Pattern) — Size	Switcher > Keyer > Pattern Mask Param	<p>Select the size of the pattern mask for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the ME that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Parameter button and select Size. 3. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 4. Enter a new size in the Value (%) field.
Mask (Pattern) — Vertical Multiplication	Switcher > Keyer > Pattern Mask Param	<p>Select the number of times you want to multiply the pattern mask vertically for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the ME that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Parameter button and select Vertical Mult. 3. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 4. Enter the number of times the pattern is multiplied in the Value field.

Event	Location	Description
Mask (Pattern) — X-Position	Switcher > Keyer > Pattern Mask Param	<p>Select the x-axis position of the pattern mask for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the ME that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Parameter button and select X-Pos. 3. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 4. Enter a new position in the Value (%) field.
Mask (Pattern) — Y-Position	Switcher > Keyer > Pattern Mask Param	<p>Select the y-axis position for the pattern mask for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the ME that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Parameter button and select Y-Pos. 3. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 4. Enter a new position in the Value (%) field.
Mask	Switcher > Keyer > Mask Type	<p>Apply a mask to the selected key for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the ME that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Keyer button for the key you want to perform the event on. 3. Click a Mask Type button to apply a pattern mask (Pattern), box mask (Box), or turn the mask off (Off).
Matte Color, Reset	Switcher > Matte > Matte Color Reset	<p>Reset the matte color for the selected ME or aux.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME/Matte button for the ME or aux that you want to perform the event on. 2. For an ME, click the Matte button and select Matte.
Matte Color (HSL)	Switcher > Matte > Matte Color (HSL)	<p>Select the custom matte color for the selected ME or aux. Each component of the HSL color must be inserted individually.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME/Matte button for the ME or aux that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Matte button and select Matte. 3. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 4. Click the Component button and select the HSL component you want to assign a value to. A value should be applied to all three components. 5. Enter a value for the selected component in the Value (%) field.
Matte Color (Preset)	Switcher > Matte > Matte Color (Preset)	<p>Select a preset matte color for the selected ME or aux.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME/Matte button for the ME or aux that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Matte button and select Matte. 3. Click the Color button and select the color you want to use.

Event	Location	Description
ME Copy	Switcher > ME Copy	Copy the contents of one area to another. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the Target ME button and select the location that you want to copy to. 2. Click the Source ME button and select the location that you want to copy from.
Media-Store — Auto Play	Switcher > MediaStore > Attributes	Select whether an animation plays automatically when taken on-air for the selected Media-Store channel. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the MediaStore Channel button for the Media-Store channel you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 3. Click the Parameter button and select Auto Play. 4. Click the Value button and select whether the animation plays automatically (On) or not (Off).
Media-Store — Capture Alpha	Switcher > MediaStore > Capture Alpha	Select whether to include the alpha with a capture on the selected Media-Store channel. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the MediaStore Channel button for the Media-Store channel you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 3. Click the Enable button and select whether the alpha is captured with the source (On) or not (Off).
Media-Store — Capture	Switcher > MediaStore > Capture	Capture a still to the selected Media-Store channel. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the MediaStore Channel button for the Media-Store channel you want to perform the event on. 2. Enter the number you want to assign to the capture file in the Capture File field.
Media-Store — Capture Mode	Switcher > MediaStore > Capture Display	Select the capture mode for the selected Media-Store channel. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the MediaStore Channel button for the Media-Store channel you want to perform the event on. 2. Click a Capture Display button to select whether the capture is in electronic-to-electronic "E/E" (End to End) or playback "P/B" (Playback) mode.
Media-Store — Capture Source	Switcher > MediaStore > Media Capture Source	Select the video source you want to capture for the selected Media-Store channel. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the MediaStore Channel button for the Media-Store channel you want to perform the event on. 2. Click Source and select the video source that you want to capture.
Media-Store — Clear Channel	Switcher > MediaStore > Channel Action	Clear the selected Media-Store channel. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the MediaStore Channel button for the Media-Store channel you want to perform the event on. 2. Click Clear Channel.

Event	Location	Description
Media-Store — Cut Frame	Switcher > MediaStore > Attributes	<p>Select the point, in frames, from the start of the animation that the MediaWipe background cut occurs for the selected Media-Store channel.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the MediaStore Channel button for the Media-Store channel you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 3. Click the Parameter button and select Cut Frame. 4. Enter the frame in the animation that you want to cut to occur for the MediaWipe in the Value field.
Media-Store — Delete Capture	Switcher > MediaStore > Delete Media Capture	<p>Delete a captured still.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Enter the number of the capture file you want to delete in the Capture File field.
Media-Store Load	Switcher > MediaStore > Load	<p>Load a media item into the selected Media-Store channel.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the MediaStore Channel button for the Media-Store channel you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Location button to select whether the media item you want to load is located on the internal storage (Internal) or on the USB (USB). 3. Enter the number of the media item you want to load in the Media Number field.
Media-Store — Looping	Switcher > MediaStore > Attributes	<p>Select whether an animation will loop at the end for the selected Media-Store channel.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the MediaStore Channel button for the Media-Store channel you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 3. Click the Parameter button and select Looping. 4. Click the Value button and select whether the animation loops at the end (On) or not (Off).
Media-Store — Move To Frame	Switcher > MediaStore > Attributes	<p>Move to a specific frame in the media item for the selected Media-Store channel.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the MediaStore Channel button for the Media-Store channel you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 3. Click the Parameter button and select Move To Frame. 4. Enter the frame that you want to jump to in the media item in the Value field.

Event	Location	Description
Media-Store — Mute	Switcher > MediaStore > Attributes	<p>Select whether the associated audio is turned on or off during playback for the selected Media-Store channel.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the MediaStore Channel button for the Media-Store channel you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 3. Click the Parameter button and select Mute. 4. Click the Value button and select whether the audio plays (On) or not (Off).
Media-Store — Play	Switcher > MediaStore > Channel Action	<p>Start an animation playing for the selected Media-Store channel.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the MediaStore Channel button for the Media-Store channel you want to perform the event on. 2. Click Toggle Play.
Media-Store — Play Speed	Switcher > MediaStore > Playback Speed	<p>Select the speed for an animation to play at on the selected Media-Store channel.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the MediaStore Channel button for the Media-Store channel you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 3. Click the Parameter button and select Playback Speed. 4. Enter the speed, faster or slower than 100%, that you want the animation to play at in the Value (%) field.
Media-Store — Reset Media	Switcher > MediaStore > Channel Action	<p>Reset the selected Media-Store channel.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the MediaStore Channel button for the Media-Store channel you want to perform the event on. 2. Click Reset Media.
Media-Store — Reverse	Switcher > MediaStore > Attributes	<p>Select whether an animation plays in reverse for the selected Media-Store channel.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the MediaStore Channel button for the Media-Store channel you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 3. Click the Parameter button and select Reverse. 4. Click the Value button and select whether the animation plays in reverse (On) or not (Off).
Media-Store — Rewind	Switcher > MediaStore > Channel Action	<p>Rewind an animation to the first frame for the selected Media-Store channel.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the MediaStore Channel button for the Media-Store channel you want to perform the event on. 2. Click Move to Frame 1.

Event	Location	Description
Media-Store — Shaped	Switcher > MediaStore > Attributes	<p>Select whether the alpha of the media item should be shaped or unshaped for the selected Media-Store channel.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the MediaStore Channel button for the Media-Store channel you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 3. Click the Parameter button and select Shaped. 4. Click the Value button and select whether the alpha of the media item is shaped (On) or not (Off).
Media-Store — Trigger GPI Output	Switcher > MediaStore > Attributes	<p>Select the GPI output that you want to trigger with a MediaWipe for the selected Media-Store channel.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the MediaStore Channel button for the Media-Store channel you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 3. Click the Parameter button and select GPO. 4. Enter the GPI output that you want to trigger with the MediaWipe in the Value field.
Media-Store — Trigger GPI Output Delay	Switcher > MediaStore > Attributes	<p>Select the time from the start of the MediaWipe that the GPI output is triggered for the selected Media-Store channel.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the MediaStore Channel button for the Media-Store channel you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 3. Click the Parameter button and select GPO Frame. 4. Enter the delay, in frames, for the GPI output to be triggered in the Value (fr) field.
Media-Store — X-Position	Switcher > MediaStore > Attributes	<p>Select the x-axis position for the media item for the selected Media-Store channel.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the MediaStore Channel button for the Media-Store channel you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 3. Click the Parameter button and select X-Pos. 4. Enter a new position in the Value field.
Media-Store — Y-Position	Switcher > MediaStore > Attributes	<p>Select the y-axis position for the media item for the selected Media-Store channel.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the MediaStore Channel button for the Media-Store channel you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 3. Click the Parameter button and select Y-Pos. 4. Enter a new position in the Value field.

Event	Location	Description
MediaWipe — Channel	Switcher > Transition > Media Wipe Channel	<p>Select which Media-Store channel will be used for the MediaWipe transition of the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the ME that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click M1 or M2 to assign that Media-Store channel to the MediaWipe.
MediaWipe Cut Point, Set	Switcher > Transition > ME Trans Action	<p>Sets the cut point for a MediaWipe transition for the selected area. You must select the point in the transition that you want to place the cut before running this event.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button and select the area that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Action button and select Set Media Cut.
MediaWipe — Direction, Flip-Flop	Switcher > Transition > Media Wipe Direction	<p>Select whether the MediaWipe reverses direction for every second transition of the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the ME that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 3. Click Flip-Flip. 4. Click the Value button and select whether Flip-Flop is on (On) or not (Off).
MediaWipe — Direction	Switcher > Transition > Media Wipe Direction	<p>Select the direction for the MediaWipe transition of the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the ME that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 3. Click Direction. 4. Click the Value button and select whether the MediaWipe moves in a forward (Forward) or reverse (Reverse) direction.
MediaWipe — Layer	Switcher > Transition > ME Media Trans Layer	<p>Select which Media-Store channel will be used for the MediaWipe transition of the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the ME that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Layer button to select what the MediaWipe animation covers.
MediaWipe Trans End Point, Set	Switcher > Transition > ME Trans Action	<p>Sets the ending point for a MediaWipe transition for the selected area. Use the fader to move through the animation to the point you want to end the transition and run this CC to save that point.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button and select the area that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Action button and select Set Media Trans End.
MediaWipe Trans Start Point, Set	Switcher > Transition > ME Trans Action	<p>Sets the starting point for a MediaWipe transition for the selected area. Use the fader to move through the animation to the point you want to start the transition and run this CC to save that point.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button and select the area that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Action button and select Set Media Trans Start.

Event	Location	Description
MediaWipe Trans Thumbnail	Switcher > Transition > ME Trans Action	<p>Sets the starting point for a MediaWipe transition for the selected area.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button and select the area that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Action button and select Set Media Thumb.
Memory Recall	Switcher > Memory Recall	<p>Recall a memory for the selected area.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the Include button and select all the locations that you want to perform the memory recall on. 2. Click the Bank button and select the bank that you want to recall the memory on. 3. Click the Memory button and select the memory that you want to recall.
ME Trans Rate	Switcher > Transition > ME Trans Parameter	<p>Set or reset the background transition rate of the selected area.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button and select the area that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Parameter button and select ME Trans Rate. 3. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 4. Enter a new transition rate, in frames, in the Value (fr) field.
ME Trans Type	Switcher > Transition > ME Trans Type	<p>Select the transition type for a background transition of the selected area.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button and select the area that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Type button for the type of transition you want to use.
MultiScreen — Edge Blending	Switcher Installation > MultiScreen > Edge Properties	<p>Select whether edge blending is applied to the edges of the overlapping edges for the selected MultiScreen.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the MultiScreen that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Parameter button and select Blending. 3. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 4. Click the Edge button and select the edge that you want to adjust. 5. Click the Value button and select whether blending is applied edge (On) or not (Off).
MultiScreen — Edge Distance	Switcher Installation > MultiScreen > Edge Parameters	<p>Select the distance between screens for the selected MultiScreen.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the MultiScreen that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Parameter button and select Distance. 3. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 4. Click the Edge button and select the edge that you want to adjust. 5. Enter the distance between the screens on the selected edge in the Value (%) field.

Event	Location	Description
MultiScreen — Edge Gamma	Switcher Installation > MultiScreen > Edge Parameters	<p>Select the amount of gamma correction applied to the overlapping edges for the selected MultiScreen.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the MultiScreen that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Parameter button and select Gamma. 3. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 4. Click the Edge button and select the edge that you want to adjust. 5. Enter the amount of gamma correction in the Value (%) field.
MultiScreen — Edge Smoothness	Switcher Installation > MultiScreen > Edge Parameters	<p>Select the amount of smoothing applied to the overlapping edges for the selected MultiScreen.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the MultiScreen that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Parameter button and select Smoothness. 3. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 4. Click the Edge button and select the edge that you want to adjust. 5. Enter the amount of smoothing in the Value (%) field.
MultiScreen — Layout	Switcher Installation > MultiScreen > Layout	<p>Select a layout for the selected MultiScreen.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the MultiScreen that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Layout button and select the layout you want to use.
MultiScreen — Offset	Switcher Installation > MultiScreen > Offset	<p>Select the placement of the background scaling for the selected MultiScreen.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the MultiScreen that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Parameter button and select Offset. 3. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 4. Enter the amount of offset in the Value (%) field.
MultiViewer Box — Aspect Ratio Markers	MultiViewer > Box > MV Box Aspect Ratio	<p>Select whether aspect ratio markers are shown for the selected box on the selected MultiViewer.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click a MultiViewer button to select which MultiViewer you want that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Box button and select the box that you want perform the event on. 3. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 4. Click a Value button and select whether aspect ratio markers are shown (On) or not (Off).

Event	Location	Description
MultiViewer Box — Border	MultiViewer > Box > MV Box Border Mode	<p>Select the type of border you want to apply to the selected box on the selected MultiViewer.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click a MultiViewer button to select which MultiViewer you want that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Box button and select the box that you want perform the event on. 3. Click a Border Mode button and select whether the border around the selected box is white (White), black (Black), or if there is no border (Off).
MultiViewer Box — Green Tally (Preview)	MultiViewer > Box > MV Box Preview Tally	<p>Select whether a green (preview) tally is shown for the selected box on the selected MultiViewer.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click a MultiViewer button to select which MultiViewer you want that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Box button and select the box that you want perform the event on. 3. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 4. Click a Value button and select whether a green tally is shown on the selected box (On) or not (Off).
MultiViewer Box — Label	MultiViewer > Box > MV Box Label	<p>Select whether the source label is on or off for the selected box on the selected MultiViewer.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click a MultiViewer button to select which MultiViewer you want that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Box button and select the box that you want perform the event on. 3. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 4. Click a Value button and select whether the label on the selected box is on (On) or not (Off).
MultiViewer Box — Label Mode	MultiViewer > Box > MV Box Label Mode	<p>Select what source name is shown on the label for the selected box on the selected MultiViewer. This event only applies to the Carbonite eXtreme.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click a MultiViewer button to select which MultiViewer you want that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Box button and select the box that you want perform the event on. 3. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 4. Click a Label Mode button and select whether the name comes from the switcher (Switcher), the router (Router), or both are shown (Both).

Event	Location	Description
MultiViewer Box — Label Position	MultiViewer > Box > MV Box Label Position	<p>Select the position of the source label for the selected box on the selected MultiViewer.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click a MultiViewer button to select which MultiViewer you want that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Box button and select the box that you want perform the event on. 3. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 4. Click a Value button and select whether the label on the selected box is at the top (Top) or bottom (Bottom).
MultiViewer Box — Label Transparency	MultiViewer > MV Label Transp	<p>Select transparency for the background behind the source labels on the selected MultiViewer.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click a MultiViewer button to select which MultiViewer you want that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 3. Enter the amount of transparency in the Value (%) field.
MultiViewer Box — MultiScreen Markers	MultiViewer > Box > MV Box MultiScreen Marker	<p>Select whether the MultiScreen overlay is shown for the selected box on the selected MultiViewer. The overlay shows what portions of the image are cropped out to fit into the output of the MultiScreen.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click a MultiViewer button to select which MultiViewer you want that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Box button and select the box that you want perform the event on. 3. Click the ME button and select the MultiScreen you want to view. 4. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 5. Click a Value button and select whether the overlay is shown (On) or not (Off).
MultiViewer Box — Red Tally (On-Air)	MultiViewer > Box > MV Box On-Air Tally	<p>Select whether a red (on-air) tally is shown for the selected box on the selected MultiViewer.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click a MultiViewer button to select which MultiViewer you want that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Box button and select the box that you want perform the event on. 3. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 4. Click a Value button and select whether a red tally is shown on the selected box (On) or not (Off).
MultiViewer Box — Video Source	MultiViewer > Box > MV Box Source	<p>Assign a source to one of the boxes on the selected MultiViewer.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click a MultiViewer button to select which MultiViewer you want that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Box button and select the box that you want perform the event on. 3. Click the Value button and select the source that you want to assign to the box.

Event	Location	Description
MultiViewer — Clip	MultiViewer > MV Keyer Clip	<p>Select the amount of clipping to be applied to the overlay source on the selected MultiViewer.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click a MultiViewer button to select which MultiViewer you want that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 3. Enter the amount of clipping to be applied in the Value field.
MultiViewer Clock — Background Color (Preset)	MultiViewer > Clock > MV Clock (Preset Color)	<p>Select a preset color for the background of the clock on the selected MultiViewer.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click a MultiViewer button to select which MultiViewer you want that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click Background. 3. Click the Color button and select the color you want to use.
MultiViewer Clock — Foreground Color (HSL)	MultiViewer > Clock > MV Clock (HSL Color)	<p>Select the custom color for the lettering of the clock on the selected MultiViewer.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click a MultiViewer button to select which MultiViewer you want that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Clock Area button and select Foreground. 3. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 4. Click the Component button and select the HSL component you want to assign a value to. A value should be applied to all three components. 5. Enter a value for the selected component in the Value (%) field.
MultiViewer Clock — Foreground Color (Preset)	MultiViewer > Clock > MV Clock (Preset Color)	<p>Select a preset color for the lettering of the clock on the selected MultiViewer.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click a MultiViewer button to select which MultiViewer you want that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click Foreground. 3. Click the Color button and select the color you want to use.
MultiViewer Clock — Format	MultiViewer > Clock > MV Clock Format	<p>Select the hour format for the clock on the selected MultiViewer.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click a MultiViewer button to select which MultiViewer you want that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click a Value button and select whether the clock shows 24-hour (24-Hours), 12-hour with am/pm (12-Hour AM/PM), or simple 12-hour (12-Hour) clock.
MultiViewer Clock — Mode	MultiViewer > Clock > MV Clock Mode	<p>Select whether the clock shows timecode or system time on the selected MultiViewer.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click a MultiViewer button to select which MultiViewer you want that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click a Clock Mode button and select whether the clock shows timecode (Timecode), system time (System), or is off (Off).

Event	Location	Description
MultiViewer Clock — Size	MultiViewer > Clock > MV Clock Param	<p>Select the size of the clock on the selected MultiViewer.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click a MultiViewer button to select which MultiViewer you want that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click Clock Size. 3. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 4. Enter the size of the clock in the Value (%) field.
MultiViewer Clock — Timecode Frame Count	MultiViewer > Clock > MV Clock Frame Count	<p>Select whether number of frames for a timecode are shown on the selected MultiViewer.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click a MultiViewer button to select which MultiViewer you want that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 3. Click a Value button and select whether the frame count is shown (On) or not (Off).
MultiViewer Clock — X-Position	MultiViewer > Clock > MV Clock Param	<p>Select the horizontal position of the clock on the selected MultiViewer.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click a MultiViewer button to select which MultiViewer you want that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click Clock X-Pos. 3. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 4. Enter the horizontal position of the clock in the Value (%) field.
MultiViewer	MultiViewer > Clock > MV Clock (HSL Color)	<p>Select the custom color for the background of the clock on the selected MultiViewer.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click a MultiViewer button to select which MultiViewer you want that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Clock Area button and select Background. 3. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 4. Click the Component button and select the HSL component you want to assign a value to. A value should be applied to all three components. 5. Enter a value for the selected component in the Value (%) field.
MultiViewer — FSFC Label	MultiViewer > MV FSFC Label	<p>Select whether FSFC is shown on the label on the selected MultiViewer when a source has an FSFC applies to it.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click a MultiViewer button to select which MultiViewer you want that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 3. Click a Value button to select whether FSFC is shown on the label (On) or not (Off).

Event	Location	Description
MultiViewer — Layout	MultiViewer > MV Layout	<p>Select a layout for the selected MultiViewer.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click a MultiViewer button to select which MultiViewer you want that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Layout button and select the layout you want to use.
MultiViewer — Outputs	Switcher Installation > Output Mode	<p>Select which outputs the MultiViewer is available on. This feature is only available when the switcher is operating in a standard-definition or 3G video mode.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click an Outputs button to select which pair of output BNCs you want to assign to as MultiViewer outputs. 2. Click a Lock MultiViewers button to assign the selected output BNCs as MultiViewer outputs (On) or not (Off).
MultiViewer — Tally Display	MultiViewer > MV Tally Display	<p>Select how the tallies are shown on the selected MultiViewer.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click a MultiViewer button to select which MultiViewer you want that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click a Tally Display button to select whether tallies are shown as a border around the box (Box), as boxes on either side of the label (Label), or as boxes on either side of the label but swapped (Label Reverse).
Output BNC Assignment	Switcher Installation > Output Assignment	<p>Assign a source to the selected output BNC.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the Output button and select the output BNC that you want to assign a source to. 2. Click the Source button and select the source that you want to assign to the selected output BNC.
Pause CC	Special > Hold	<p>Insert a pause into the custom control.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Enter the length of the pause in the Pause (fr) field.
PBus — Recall	Devices > PBus	<p>Recall a register on the selected PBus device.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click PBus Recall Register. 2. Click the PBus button and select the device you want to send the command to. 3. Click the Device button and select the channel you want to send the command to. 4. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 5. Enter number of the register you want to recall in the Register field.
PBus — Trigger	Devices > PBus	<p>Trigger a function on the selected PBus device.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click PBus Trigger Function. 2. Click the PBus button and select the device you want to send the command to. 3. Click the Device button and select the channel you want to send the command to. 4. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 5. Enter the number of the function you want to trigger in the Function field.

Event	Location	Description
Personality — Auto Remove Key	Switcher Personality > Auto Remove Key	<p>Have a key removed from the Next Transition area, so that it is not included in the next transition, after it has been transitioned off-air using the KEY X CUT or KEY X AUTO buttons.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. Click the Value button and select whether the personality option is on (On) or not (Off).
Personality — Auto Trans Second Press (Key)	Switcher Personality > Key Auto Trans 2nd Press	<p>Select how the switcher reacts when the KEY AUTO button is pressed during a transition.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Click the Second Auto button and select how the switcher reacts to pressing the button during a transition. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Ignore — the buttons are ignored during the transition Halt Forward — halt the transition and move forward through the transition when pressed again Halt Reverse — halt the transition and move backwards through the transition when pressed again Reverse — reverse the transition immediately Cut — cut the transition to the end
Personality — Auto Trans Second Press (ME)	Switcher Personality > ME Auto Trans 2nd Press	<p>Select how the switcher reacts when the AUTO TRANS button is pressed during a transition.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Click the Second Auto button and select how the switcher reacts to pressing the button during a transition. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Ignore — the buttons are ignored during the transition Halt Forward — halt the transition and move forward through the transition when pressed again Halt Reverse — halt the transition and move backwards through the transition when pressed again Reverse — reverse the transition immediately Cut — cut the transition to the end
Personality — Next Trans Reset	Switcher Personality > Auto Reset Trans	<p>Have the transition area reset to a default background dissolve after each transition.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. Click the Value button and select whether the personality option is on (On) or not (Off).
Personality — Roll Clip	Switcher Personality > Roll Clip Force	<p>Select whether the Roll Clip functionality is always on.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Click a Value button to select whether Roll Clip is always on (Force) or must be turned on manually (User).
Play CC	Special > Play CC	<p>Play a custom control. Note: The Play CC command applies to a target custom control button only. If you move the contents of the custom control from the button selected in the Play CC to another button, the Play CC command will not follow and will continue to play the custom control assigned to the original button.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Click the Bank button and select the custom control bank you want to play a custom control on. Click the CC button and select the custom control you want to play.

Event	Location	Description
Reference Source	Switcher Installation > Reference > Video Reference	Select the reference source for the switcher. 1. Click a Reference Source button to select whether to use an internal (Internal) or external (External) reference source.
Reset	Switcher > Transition > ME Trans Action	Resets the transition area of the selected area. 1. Click the ME button and select the area that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Action button and select Reset .
Resume CC	Special > Resume CC	Resume a custom control at hold. 1. Click the Bank button and select the custom control bank you want to resume a custom control on. 2. Click the CC button and select the custom control you want to resume.
Robotic Camera — Halt All	Devices > Camera	Send the halt command to the selected camera. 1. Click Camera Halt All . 2. Click the Camera button and select the device you want to send the command to.
Robotic Camera — Recall Shot	Devices > Camera	Recall a shot on the selected camera at the rate/speed set in the shot. 1. Click Recall Shot . 2. Click the Camera button and select the device you want to send the command to. 3. Click the Channel button and select the channel you want to send the command to. 4. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 5. Enter the shot number you want to recall from in the Shot field.
Robotic Camera — Recall Shot Fast	Devices > Camera	Recall a shot on the selected camera as quickly as possible. 1. Click Recall Shot (Fast) . 2. Click the Camera button and select the device you want to send the command to. 3. Click the Channel button and select the channel you want to send the command to. 4. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 5. Enter the shot number you want to recall from in the Shot field.

Event	Location	Description
Robotic Camera — Store Shot	Devices > Camera	<p>Store a shot on the selected camera.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click Store Shot. 2. Click the Camera button and select the device you want to send the command to. 3. Click the Channel button and select the channel you want to send the command to. 4. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 5. Enter the shot number you want to store to in the Shot field.
Roll Clip	Switcher > Transition > Roll Clip	<p>Turn the Roll Clip feature on or off for the selected area.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button and select the area that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Value button and select whether roll clip is on (On) or not (Off).
RossTalk CC	Devices > RossTalk	<p>Send the simulated custom control to the selected device.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click CC. 2. Click the RossTalk Device button and select the device you want to send the RossTalk command to. 3. Enter the bank of the custom control in the Bank field. 4. Enter the number of the custom control in the Custom field.
RossTalk Clear	Devices > RossTalk	<p>Send the Clear Framebuffer command for a framebuffer and layer to the selected device.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click Clear Channel. 2. Click the RossTalk Device button and select the device you want to send the RossTalk command to. 3. Enter the framebuffer that you want to clear in the Channel field. 4. Enter the layer that you want to clear in the Layer field.
RossTalk — Cue (item + framebuffer)	Devices > RossTalk	<p>Send the Cue command for a specific item and framebuffer to the selected device.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click Cue (2). 2. Click the RossTalk Device button and select the device you want to send the RossTalk command to. 3. Enter the take item id of the item you want to cue in the Take ID field. 4. Enter the framebuffer that you want to cue the item on in the Channel field.
RossTalk — Cue (item + framebuffer + layer)	Devices > RossTalk	<p>Send the Cue command for a specific item and location to the selected device.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click Cue (3). 2. Click the RossTalk Device button and select the device you want to send the RossTalk command to. 3. Enter the take item id of the item you want to cue in the Take ID field. 4. Enter the framebuffer that you want to cue the item on in the Channel field. 5. Enter the layer that you want to cue the item on in the Layer field.

Event	Location	Description
RossTalk — Cue Current	Devices > RossTalk	<p>Send the Cue command to the selected device.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click Cue. 2. Click the RossTalk Device button and select the device you want to send the RossTalk command to.
RossTalk Custom Command	Devices > RossTalk	<p>Send a manual RossTalk string to the selected device.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click a RossTalk CustomCmd button for how you want the custom control command message to be formatted. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CRLF — message ends with a carriage return and a line feed. • CR — message ends with a carriage return. • LF — message ends with a line feed. • no CRLF — message ends without a carriage return or a line feed. 2. Click the RossTalk Device button and select the device you want to send the RossTalk command to. 3. Enter the RossTalk string in the Custom Cmd field.
RossTalk — Focus	Devices > RossTalk	<p>Send the Focus command for a specific item to the selected device.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click Focus. 2. Click the RossTalk Device button and select the device you want to send the RossTalk command to. 3. Enter the take item id of the item you want to have focus in the Take ID field.
RossTalk — GPI	Devices > RossTalk	<p>Send the simulated GPI input to the selected device.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click GPI. 2. Click the RossTalk Device button and select the device you want to send the RossTalk command to. 3. Enter the GPI you want to simulate triggering in the GPI field.
RossTalk — Next	Devices > RossTalk	<p>Send the Next command to the selected device.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click Take Next. 2. Click the RossTalk Device button and select the device you want to send the RossTalk command to.
RossTalk — Read	Devices > RossTalk	<p>Send the Read command for a specific item and layer to the selected device.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click Read. 2. Click the RossTalk Device button and select the device you want to send the RossTalk command to. 3. Enter the take item id of the item you want to read in the Take ID field. 4. Enter the layer that you want to cue the item on in the Layer field.
RossTalk — Resume	Devices > RossTalk	<p>Send the Resume command for a framebuffer and layer to the selected device.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click Resume Channel. 2. Click the RossTalk Device button and select the device you want to send the RossTalk command to. 3. Enter the framebuffer that you want to resume in the Channel field. 4. Enter the layer that you want to resume in the Layer field.

Event	Location	Description
RossTalk — Sequencer Down	Devices > RossTalk	Send the Sequencer Down command to the selected device. 1. Click Sequencer Down . 2. Click the RossTalk Device button and select the device you want to send the RossTalk command to.
RossTalk — Sequencer Up	Devices > RossTalk	Send the Sequencer Up command to the selected device. 1. Click Sequencer Up . 2. Click the RossTalk Device button and select the device you want to send the RossTalk command to.
RossTalk — Swap Current	Devices > RossTalk	Send the Swap command to the selected device. 1. Click Swap . 2. Click the RossTalk Device button and select the device you want to send the RossTalk command to.
RossTalk — Swap	Devices > RossTalk	Send the Swap command for a specific location to the selected device. 1. Click Swap (2) . 2. Click the RossTalk Device button and select the device you want to send the RossTalk command to. 3. Enter the framebuffer that you want to swap the items on in the Channel field. 4. Enter the layer that you want to swap the items on in the Layer field.
RossTalk — Take Current	Devices > RossTalk	Send the Take command to the selected device. 1. Click Take . 2. Click the RossTalk Device button and select the device you want to send the RossTalk command to.
RossTalk — Take	Devices > RossTalk	Send the Take command for a specific item and location to the selected device. 1. Click Take (3) . 2. Click the RossTalk Device button and select the device you want to send the RossTalk command to. 3. Enter the take item id of the item you want to take in the Take ID field. 4. Enter the framebuffer that you want to take the item on in the Channel field. 5. Enter the layer that you want to take the item on in the Layer field.
RossTalk — Take Off	Devices > RossTalk	Send the Take Off command for a specific item to the selected device. 1. Click Take Offline . 2. Click the RossTalk Device button and select the device you want to send the RossTalk command to. 3. Enter the take item id of the item you want to take in the Take ID field.
RState, Load	Switcher > Load RState	Load the custom reset settings for the selected area. 1. Click the Include button and select all the locations that you want to recall the custom reset settings on.
Source Substitution, Delete	Switcher Installation > Source Substitution > Delete Subst Table	Delete an entry from the substitution table. 1. Click the Source button and select the source that you want to delete the substitution(s) for. If more than one substitution entry exists for the selected source, all those entries will be deleted.

Event	Location	Description
Source Substitution	Switcher Installation > Source Substitution > Source ME Sub	Set a source substitution for the substitution table. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the Source button and select the source that you want to set a substitution for. 2. Click the ME button and select the MiniME™ that you want to assign a substitution source to. 3. Click the Subst button and select the source you want to substitute for the selected source.
State, Insert	Special > State	Insert the current state of the switcher into the custom control. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click State Attributes and select the elements that you want to include in the state of the switcher when it is stored to the custom control.
Switching Field	Switcher Installation > Field Switch	Select the field that a video transition will be performed on. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click a Switch Field button to select whether video transitions are performed on field 1 only (Field 1), field 2 only (Field 2), or the current field (Both).
Trans Clear	Switcher > Transition > ME Trans Action	Configures the next transition area of the selected area to take all keys off-air with the next transition. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button and select the area that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Action button and select Trans Clear.
Trans Elements	Switcher > Transition > ME Trans Elements	Select the elements to be included in the next transition of the selected area. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button and select the area that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Elements button and select background and/or the keys that you want to include in the next transition.
Trans Limit — On/Off	Switcher > Transition > ME Trans Limit	Turn the transition limit feature on or off for the selected area. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button and select the area that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 3. Click the Value button and select whether trans limit is on (On) or not (Off).
Trans Limit — Reset	Switcher > Transition > ME Trans Action	Resets the transition limit point of the selected area. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button and select the area that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Action button and select Reset Limit.
Trans Limit — Set	Switcher > Transition > ME Trans Action	Sets the transition limit point of the selected area. You must select the point in the transition that you want to place the limit before running this event. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button and select the area that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Action button and select Set Limit.

Event	Location	Description
Trans Limit — Value	Switcher > Transition > ME Trans Limit Value	<p>Select the limit point for the trans limit of the selected area.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button and select the area that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 3. Enter the point in the transition that you want to place the trans limit in the Value (%) field.
Video Mode	Switcher Installation > Reference > Video Format	<p>Select the video format that the switcher will operate in.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the Video Mode button and select the video format for the switcher.
Video Server — Cue	Devices > Video Server	<p>Send the Cue command and name of clip to cue to the selected device.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click Cue. 2. Click the Video Server button and select the device you want to send the command to. 3. Click a Channel button to select the channel you want to send the command to. 4. Enter the identifier of the clip in the Clip Name field.
Video Server — Loop Off	Devices > Video Server	<p>Send the Loop Off command to the selected device.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click Loop Off. 2. Click the Video Server button and select the device you want to send the command to. 3. Click a Channel button to select the channel you want to send the command to.
Video Server — Loop On	Devices > Video Server	<p>Send the Loop On command to the selected device.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click Loop On. 2. Click the Video Server button and select the device you want to send the command to. 3. Click a Channel button to select the channel you want to send the command to.
Video Server — Play	Devices > Video Server	<p>Send the Play command to the selected device.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click Play. 2. Click the Video Server button and select the device you want to send the command to. 3. Click a Channel button to select the channel you want to send the command to.
Video Server — Record	Devices > Video Server	<p>Send the Record command to the selected device.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click Record. 2. Click the Video Server button and select the device you want to send the command to. 3. Click a Channel button to select the channel you want to send the command to.
Video Server — Stop	Devices > Video Server	<p>Send the Stop command to the selected device.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click Play. 2. Click the Video Server button and select the device you want to send the command to. 3. Click a Channel button to select the channel you want to send the command to.

Event	Location	Description
Wash Color (HSL)	Switcher > Matte > Wash Color (HSL)	<p>Select the custom matte color for the selected ME or aux. Each component of the HSL color must be inserted individually. This is the second color of the wash, the first color is set from the matte color.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the ME that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Matte button and select Wash. 3. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 4. Click the Component button and select the HSL component you want to assign a value to. A value should be applied to all three components. 5. Enter a value for the selected component in the Value (%) field.
Wash Color (Preset)	Switcher > Matte > Wash Color (Preset)	<p>Select a preset wash color for the selected ME. This is the second color of the wash, the first color is set from the matte color.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the ME that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Matte button and select Wash. 3. Click the Color button and select the color you want to use.
Wash Color Reset	Switcher > Matte > Wash Color Reset	<p>Reset the matte color for the selected ME. This is the second color of the wash, the first color is set from the matte color.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the ME that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Matte button and select Wash.
Wash Generator — Disable	Switcher > Matte > Wash Enabled Reset	<p>Disable the wash generator for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the ME that you want to perform the event on.
Wash Generator — Enable	Switcher > Matte > Wash Enabled	<p>Enable the wash generator for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the ME that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Wash button and select whether the wash generator is enabled (On) or not (Off).
Wipe Direction (Flip-Flop)	Switcher > Transition > Wipe Direction	<p>Select whether the wipe reverses direction for every second transition of the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the ME that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Pattern button and select Wipe. 3. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 4. Click the Parameter button and select Flip-Flop. 5. Click the Value button and select whether Flip-Flop is on (On) or off (Off).

Event	Location	Description
Wipe Direction	Switcher > Transition > Wipe Direction	<p>Select the direction for the wipe transition of the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the ME that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Pattern button and select Wipe. 3. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 4. Click the Parameter button and select Direction. 5. Click the Value button and select whether the wipe moves in a forward (Forward) or reverse (Reverse) direction.
Wipe Pattern — Aspect Ratio	Switcher > Transition > Wipe Param	<p>Select the aspect ratio for the wipe pattern you want to use for a wipe transition of the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the ME that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Parameter button and select Aspect. 3. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 4. Enter an aspect ratio in the Value (%) field.
Wipe Pattern — Border Color (HSL)	Switcher > Transition > Wipe Border Color (HSL)	<p>Select the custom color you want to apply to the border of the pattern for the wipe transition of the selected ME. Each component of the HSL color must be inserted individually.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the ME that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Matte button and select Wipe Border. 3. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 4. Click the Component button and select the HSL component you want to assign a value to. A value should be applied to all three components. 5. Enter a value for the selected component in the Value (%) field.
Wipe Pattern — Border Color (Preset)	Switcher > Transition > Wipe Border Color (Preset)	<p>Select the preset color you want to apply to the border of the pattern for the wipe transition of the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the ME that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Matte button and select Wipe Border. 3. Click the Color button and select the preset color you want to apply to the border.
Wipe Pattern — Border Size	Switcher > Transition > Wipe Param	<p>Select the size of border for the wipe pattern you want to use for a wipe transition of the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the ME that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Parameter button and select Border Size. 3. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 4. Enter a size for the border in the Value (%) field.

Event	Location	Description
Wipe Pattern — Edge Softness	Switcher > Transition > Wipe Param	<p>Select the amount of softness to apply to the edge of the pattern or border for the wipe pattern you want to use for a wipe transition of the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the ME that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Parameter button and select Softness. 3. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 4. Enter an amount of softness for the pattern or border in the Value (%) field.
Wipe Pattern — Horizontal Multiplication	Switcher > Transition > Wipe Param	<p>Select the number of times you want to multiply the wipe pattern horizontally for the wipe transition of the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the ME that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Parameter button and select Horizontal Mult. 3. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 4. Enter the number of times the pattern is multiplied in the Value field.
Wipe Pattern — Pattern	Switcher > Transition > Wipe Effect	<p>Select the pattern you want to use for a wipe transition of the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the ME that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Pattern button and select the pattern you want to use for the wipe.
Wipe Pattern — Rotation	Switcher > Transition > Wipe Param	<p>Select the rotation for the wipe pattern you want to use for a wipe transition of the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the ME that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Parameter button and select Rotation. 3. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 4. Enter a rotation in the Value (%) field.
Wipe Pattern — Size	Switcher > Transition > Wipe Param	<p>Select the size for the wipe pattern you want to use for a wipe transition of the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the ME that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Parameter button and select Size. 3. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 4. Enter a new size in the Value (%) field.

Event	Location	Description
Wipe Pattern — Vertical Multiplication	Switcher > Transition > Wipe Param	<p>Select the number of times you want to multiply the wipe pattern vertically for the wipe transition of the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the ME that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Parameter button and select Vertical Mult. 3. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 4. Enter the number of times the pattern is multiplied in the Value field.
Wipe Pattern — X-Position	Switcher > Transition > Wipe Param	<p>Select the x-axis position for the wipe pattern you want to use for a wipe transition of the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the ME that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Parameter button and select X-Pos. 3. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 4. Enter a new position in the Value (%) field.
Wipe Pattern — Y-Position	Switcher > Transition > Wipe Param	<p>Select the y-axis position for the wipe pattern you want to use for a wipe transition of the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the ME that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the Parameter button and select Y-Pos. 3. Click the Change Type button and select whether you want to set (Absolute) or reset (Reset) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 4. Enter a new position in the Value (%) field.
Wipe Reset	Switcher > Transition > Wipe Reset	<p>Reset the parameters or direction and flip-flop for the wipe transition of the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the ME button for the ME that you want to perform the event on. 2. Click Reset Params to reset the wipe parameters or Reset Direction to reset the wipe direction and flip-flop.

Glossary

Interlaced

An Interlaced video format starts at the top of the screen and draws all the odd number scan lines and then all the even number scan lines in sequence. This results in half the image being drawn in one pass and the other half of the image being drawn in the second. These two passes are called Fields, where the first pass is called Field 1 and the second pass is called Field 2. When both Field 1 and Field 2 have been drawn, resulting in a complete image, you have a single Frame.

Progressive

A Progressive scan video format draws each scan line in sequence, starting from the top of the screen and working to the bottom. Unlike Interlaced, with Progressive scan the entire image is drawn at one time, in a single pass. This means that there are no fields in a Progressive scan image.

Auto Key

A pairing of two video signals, a key video and a key alpha, to create a key. In the switcher, you associate the fill and alpha so that the switcher knows which alpha to use when the video is selected.

Auto Transition

An automatic transition in which the manual movement of the fader handle is simulated electronically. The transition starts when the **AUTO TRANS** button is pressed and takes place over a pre-selected time period, measured in frames.

Chroma Key

Chroma Key is a key in which the hole is cut based on a color value, or hue, rather than a luminance value or alpha signal. The color is removed and replaced with background video from another source.

Cut

An instantaneous switch from one video signal to another.

Dissolve

A transition from one video signal to another in which one signal is faded down, while the other is simultaneously faded up. The terms mix or cross-fade are often used interchangeably with dissolve.

Field

One half of a complete picture (or frame) interval containing all of the odd, or all of the even, lines in interlaced scanning. One scan of a TV screen is called a field; two fields are required to make a complete picture (which is a frame).

Force, Mask

An effect that forces the masked region to the foreground but is not bound by the key. For example, if you have a key and apply a mask to it. The masked area is bound by the edges of the key. When force is turned on, the masked area is filled with the video from the key (nothing appears masked) but you can move the mask outside of the key and the key video is still filling the masked region.

Frame

One complete picture consisting of two fields of interlaced scanning lines.

File Transfer Protocol

A network protocol that is used to transfer files from one host computer to another over a TCP-based network.

Gain

Gain represents the range of signal values present in a video signal from a lowest to a highest point (from black to white for example). Increasing gain expands this range, while decreasing gain compresses this range. Clipping occurs if applied gain changes cause output signal values to fall outside the allowable range. Generally, increasing the gain for a specific color component causes the video signal colors to become increasingly saturated with that color. Similarly, decreasing the gain for a specific color component progressively removes that color component from the output video signal.

Gamma

Gamma corrections introduce non-linear corrections to a video signal. A gamma

correction can be described as taking a point on the output versus input video signal line and pulling it perpendicularly away from the line. The result is a Bezier curve between the start, the new point, and the end point. Generally, increasing the gamma value adds more of the component to the video signal in the location of the gamma offset point. Decreasing the gamma value reduces the amount of the component in the video signal in the location of the gamma offset point. Moving the gamma offset point allows you to select which part of the input video signal receives the gamma correction. For example, if you increase the red gamma correction to the part of the video signal that has no red component you will add red to those areas while having little effect on areas that already contain a significant amount of red. This allows you to add a red tint to the image while minimizing the amount of red-clipping that occurs.

General Purpose Interface

A simple high/low signal that is used to trigger an action either on an external device or on the switcher. A GPI can be an input or an output to the switcher.

High Definition

A high definition (720p, 1080i, or 1080p/3G) video signal.

Hue

The characteristic of a color signal that determines whether the color is red, yellow, green, blue, purple, etc. (the three characteristics of a TV color signal are chrominance, luminance, and hue). White, black, and gray are not considered hues.

Hue Rotation

Hue rotate affects the color of the entire video signal by rotating the input video hues. This produces an output video signal with colors that are shifted from their original hues. By rotating colors around the wheel, hue values will shift. For example, a clockwise rotation where yellows become orange, reds become magenta, blues become green. The more rotation applied, the further around the wheel colors are shifted.

Key

An effect produced by cutting a hole in the background video, then filling the hole with video or matte from another source. Key source video cuts the hole, key fill video fills the hole. The video signal used for cut and fill can come from the same, or separate, sources.

Key Alpha

The video signal which cuts a hole in the background video to make a key effect possible. Also called Key Video or Source. In practice, this signal controls when a video mixer circuit will switch from background to key fill video.

Key Invert

An effect that reverses the polarity of the key source so that the holes in the background are cut by dark areas of the key source instead of bright areas.

Key Mask

A keying technique in which a shape is combined with the key source to block out unwanted portions of the key source.

Key Video

A video input which is timed to fill the hole provided by the key source video. An example of key video is the video output of a character generator.

Linear Key

Linear keys make it possible to fully specify the transparency of a key from opaque, through transparent, to fully off. The transparency is specified by the key alpha that is associated with the key video. A keyer capable of a linear key converts the key signal voltage directly to the transparency effect on the screen.

Mnemonics

A green, orange, or yellow display used to show the names of a source above or below the source button or used as a custom command or pattern button.

Offsets

Offsets shift the video signal by a set amount. Depending on the offset applied, different parts or all of the video signal may be affected. Clipping occurs if applied offsets cause output signal values to fall outside the allowable range.

Pre-Delay

A pre-delay is a delay that is inserted into a transition between the triggering of a GPI output and performing the transition. The length of the pre-delay is usually the length of time your video server requires to start playing a clip or your character generator required to load a page.

RossTalk

An ethernet based protocol that allows the control over Ross devices using plain english commands.

Standard-Definition

A standard definition (480i or 576i) video signal.

Self Key

A key effect in which the same video signal serves as both the key signal and key fill.

Shaped Key

An additive key where the Key Alpha cuts a hole based on the monochrome value of the alpha. Shades of gray are translated into either white or black, giving the key a hard edge. Shaped Key alphas are sometimes used with Character Generators to cut very precise holes for the fill.

Split Key

A Split key allows you to assign a different alpha source for a key than the fill/alpha associations that are set up during configuration or to use a separate alpha source for a Self key.

Tally

An indicator which illuminates when the associated button, or control, is selected or is on-air.

Unshaped Key

A multiplicative key where the Key Alpha cuts a hole based on the gradient values of the alpha. Shades of gray are translated into transparency levels, giving the key a soft edge. Unshaped Key alphas can also be considered true linear alphas.

Index

Numerics

1080p 25/29.97Hz Mode [64](#)
3G Mode [64](#)

A

Allocated DVEs [103](#)
Ancillary Data [73](#)
Ancillary Mode [103](#)
Animations [52](#)
Aspect Ratio [84](#)
Aspect Ratio Conversion [83](#)
 Full [83](#)
 Letterbox [84](#)
 Pillarbox [84](#)
 Zoom [83](#)
Audio [52](#)
Auto Follow [70](#)
 Custom Pages [70](#)
Auto Key [68](#)
Auto Select Keys [37](#)
Auto Transition [30–32](#)
Aux Bus [22](#)
 Source Selection [22](#)

B

BG Source [26](#)
Bus Hold [46](#)
Bus Map, Default [105](#)
Bus Maps [89](#)
Bus Select Buttons, ViewControl [96](#)

C

Canvas [22](#)
 Source Selection [22](#)
Capture [54](#)
CarboNET [60–61](#)
 Network Settings [61](#)
Cards [100–101](#)
 Controller [100](#)
 Ethernet Interface [100](#)
 GPIO/Tally [100](#)
 Input [100–101](#)
 Output [100–101](#)
 Switcher/Crosspoint [100](#)
CC, *See* Custom Controls
CC Pause [56](#)
Chroma Key [38, 40](#)
 Advanced Mode [40](#)
 Basic Mode [38](#)
Chroma Key Modes [38](#)
Clean Feed [24, 73](#)
Clear Custom Controls [105](#)

Clear Memories [105](#)
Color Background [26](#)
Color Schemes [88](#)
Colors, Memory Recall [47](#)
Controller Cards [100–101](#)
Copy Keys [27](#)
Copy Logs [103](#)
Copy MEs [27](#)
CPU Temperature [103](#)
Custom Control Buttons, ViewControl [96](#)
Custom Control Event [110, 120](#)
 Ancillary Data Mode [110](#)
 Audio Pan [110](#)
 Audio Volume [110](#)
 Auto Trans [110](#)
 Bus Source [110](#)
 Cancel All CC [110](#)
 Cancel CC [110](#)
 Chroma Key Color [111](#)
 Chroma Key Initialize [111](#)
 Chroma Key Mode [111](#)
 Chroma Key Parameters [111](#)
 Clean Feed [111](#)
 Color Framing [111](#)
 Cut Transition [111](#)
 DVE Freeze [112](#)
 DVE Key Aspect [112](#)
 DVE Key Border [113](#)
 DVE Key Border Color (HSL) [112](#)
 DVE Key Border Color (Preset) [112](#)
 DVE Key Crop (Bottom Edge) [113](#)
 DVE Key Crop (Dual Edge) [113](#)
 DVE Key Crop (Left Edge) [113](#)
 DVE Key Crop (Right Edge) [114](#)
 DVE Key Crop (Top Edge) [114](#)
 DVE Key Edge Softness [114](#)
 DVE Key Size [114](#)
 DVE Key X-Position [115](#)
 DVE Key Y-Position [115](#)
 DVE Wipe Direction [115](#)
 DVE Wipe Direction (Flip-Flop) [115](#)
 DVE Wipe Pattern [116](#)
 DVE Wipe, Reset [115](#)
 EmbeddedTriggers — Enable [116](#)
 EmbeddedTriggers — Insert [116](#)
 EmbeddedTriggers — Set DID [116](#)
 EmbeddedTriggers — Set Line [116](#)
 EmbeddedTriggers — Set Remote ID [116](#)
 EmbeddedTriggers — Set SDID [116](#)
 Fly Key (DVE) [117](#)
 GPI Output — Edge Trigger Setup [117](#)
 GPI Output — Level Trigger Setup [117](#)
 GPI Output — Mode [117](#)
 GPI Output — Trigger [117](#)
 GPI Output — Trigger Type [117](#)
 Hold CC [117](#)
 Key Active [118](#)

Custom Control Event (*continued*)

- Key Copy [118](#)
- Key Invert [118](#)
- Key Mode [118](#)
- Key Only Transition [118](#)
- Key Settings (Clip, Gain, Transparency) [119](#)
- Key Trans Rate [119](#)
- Key Type [119](#)
- Key, Make Linear [117](#)
- Key, Reset [119](#)
- Layer Mode [119](#)
- Loop CC [119](#)
- Mask [124](#)
- Mask (Box) — Left Edge Position [121](#)
- Mask (Box) — Right Edge Position [121](#)
- Mask (Box) — Size [121](#)
- Mask (Box) — Top Edge Position [121](#)
- Mask (Box) — X-Position [122](#)
- Mask (Box) — Y-Position [122](#)
- Mask (Pattern) — Aspect Ratio [122](#)
- Mask (Pattern) — Border Size [122](#)
- Mask (Pattern) — Edge Softness [122](#)
- Mask (Pattern) — Horizontal Multiplication [123](#)
- Mask (Pattern) — Pattern [123](#)
- Mask (Pattern) — Reset [123](#)
- Mask (Pattern) — Rotation [123](#)
- Mask (Pattern) — Size [123](#)
- Mask (Pattern) — Vertical Multiplication [123](#)
- Mask (Pattern) — X-Position [124](#)
- Mask (Pattern) — Y-Position [124](#)
- Mask, Force [120](#)
- Mask, Invert [120](#)
- Mask, Reset [120](#)
- Matte Color (HSL) [124](#)
- Matte Color (Preset) [124](#)
- Matte Color, Reset [124](#)
- ME Copy [125](#)
- ME Trans Rate [130](#)
- ME Trans Type [130](#)
- Media Cut Point, Set [129](#)
- Media Trans End Point, Set [129](#)
- Media Trans Start Point, Set [129](#)
- Media Trans Thumbnail [130](#)
- Media-Store — Auto Play [125](#)
- Media-Store — Capture [125](#)
- Media-Store — Capture Alpha [125](#)
- Media-Store — Capture Mode [125](#)
- Media-Store — Capture Source [125](#)
- Media-Store — Clear Channel [125](#)
- Media-Store — Cut Frame [126](#)
- Media-Store — Delete Capture [126](#)
- Media-Store — Load [126](#)
- Media-Store — Looping [126](#)
- Media-Store — Move To Frame [126](#)
- Media-Store — Mute [127](#)
- Media-Store — Play [127](#)
- Media-Store — Play Speed [127](#)
- Media-Store — Reset Media [127](#)
- Media-Store — Reverse [127](#)
- Media-Store — Rewind [127](#)
- Media-Store — Shaped [128](#)

Custom Control Event (*continued*)

- Media-Store — Trigger GPI Output Delay [128](#)
- Media-Store — Trigger GPI Output [128](#)
- Media-Store — X-Position [128](#)
- Media-Store — Y-Position [128](#)
- MediaWipe — Channel [129](#)
- MediaWipe — Direction [129](#)
- MediaWipe — Direction, Flip-Flop [129](#)
- MediaWipe — Layer [129](#)
- Memory Recall [130](#)
- MultiScreen — Edge Blending [130](#)
- MultiScreen — Edge Distance [130](#)
- MultiScreen — Edge Gamma [131](#)
- MultiScreen — Edge Smoothness [131](#)
- MultiScreen — Layout [131](#)
- MultiScreen — Offset [131](#)
- MultiViewer — Clip [134](#)
- MultiViewer — FSFC Label [135](#)
- MultiViewer — Layout [136](#)
- MultiViewer — Outputs [136](#)
- MultiViewer — Tally Display [136](#)
- MultiViewer Box — Aspect Ratio Markers [131](#)
- MultiViewer Box — Border [132](#)
- MultiViewer Box — Green Tally (Preview) [132](#)
- MultiViewer Box — Label [132](#)
- MultiViewer Box — Label Mode [132](#)
- MultiViewer Box — Label Position [133](#)
- MultiViewer Box — Label Transparency [133](#)
- MultiViewer Box — MultiScreen Markers [133](#)
- MultiViewer Box — Red Tally (On-Air) [133](#)
- MultiViewer Box — Video Source [133](#)
- MultiViewer Clock — Background Color (HSL) [135](#)
- MultiViewer Clock — Background Color (Preset) [134](#)
- MultiViewer Clock — Foreground Color (HSL) [134](#)
- MultiViewer Clock — Foreground Color (Preset) [134](#)
- MultiViewer Clock — Format [134](#)
- MultiViewer Clock — Mode [134](#)
- MultiViewer Clock — Size [135](#)
- MultiViewer Clock — Timecode Frame Count [135](#)
- MultiViewer Clock — X-Position [135](#)
- Output BNC Assignment [136](#)
- Pause CC [136](#)
- PBus — Recall [136](#)
- PBus — Trigger [136](#)
- Personality — Auto Remove Key [137](#)
- Personality — Auto Trans Second Press (Key) [137](#)
- Personality — Auto Trans Second Press (ME) [137](#)
- Personality — Next Trans Reset [137](#)
- Personality — Roll Clip [137](#)
- Play CC [137](#)
- Reference Source [138](#)
- Reset [138](#)
- Resume CC [138](#)
- Robotic Camera — Halt All [138](#)
- Robotic Camera — Recall Shot [138](#)
- Robotic Camera — Recall Shot Fast [138](#)
- Robotic Camera — Store Shot [139](#)
- Roll Clip [139](#)
- RossTalk — CC [139](#)
- RossTalk — Clear [139](#)
- RossTalk — Cue (item + framebuffer + layer) [139](#)

Custom Control Event (*continued*)

- RossTalk — Cue (item + framebuffer) [139](#)
- RossTalk — Cue Current [140](#)
- RossTalk — Focus [140](#)
- RossTalk — GPI [140](#)
- RossTalk — Next [140](#)
- RossTalk — Read [140](#)
- RossTalk — Resume [140](#)
- RossTalk — Sequencer Down [141](#)
- RossTalk — Sequencer Up [141](#)
- RossTalk — Swap [141](#)
- RossTalk — Swap Current [141](#)
- RossTalk — Take [141](#)
- RossTalk — Take Current [141](#)
- RossTalk — Take Off [141](#)
- RossTalk Custom Command [140](#)
- RState, Load [141](#)
- Source Substitution [142](#)
- Source Substitution, Delete [141](#)
- State, Insert [142](#)
- Switching Field [142](#)
- Trans Clear [142](#)
- Trans Elements [142](#)
- Trans Limit — On/Off [142](#)
- Trans Limit — Reset [142](#)
- Trans Limit — Set [142](#)
- Trans Limit — Value [143](#)
- Video Mode [143](#)
- Video Server — Cue [143](#)
- Video Server — Loop Off [143](#)
- Video Server — Loop On [143](#)
- Video Server — Play [143](#)
- Video Server — Record [143](#)
- Video Server — Stop [143](#)
- Wash Color (HSL) [144](#)
- Wash Color (Preset) [144](#)
- Wash Color Reset [144](#)
- Wash Generator — Disable [144](#)
- Wash Generator — Enable [144](#)
- Wipe Direction [145](#)
- Wipe Direction (Flip-Flop) [144](#)
- Wipe Pattern — Aspect Ratio [145](#)
- Wipe Pattern — Border Color (HSL) [145](#)
- Wipe Pattern — Border Color (Preset) [145](#)
- Wipe Pattern — Border Size [145](#)
- Wipe Pattern — Edge Softness [146](#)
- Wipe Pattern — Horizontal Multiplication [146](#)
- Wipe Pattern — Pattern [146](#)
- Wipe Pattern — Rotation [146](#)
- Wipe Pattern — Size [146](#)
- Wipe Pattern — Vertical Multiplication [147](#)
- Wipe Pattern — X-Position [147](#)
- Wipe Pattern — Y-Position [147](#)
- Wipe Reset [147](#)

Custom Controls [19](#), [56–58](#), [110](#)

- CC Pause [56](#)
- Copy/Paste [58](#)
- DashBoard [19](#)
- Deleting [58](#)
- Editing [56](#)
- Events [110](#)

Custom Controls (*continued*)

- Naming [57](#)
- Recording [56](#)
- Run Event [56](#)
- Running [57](#)

Custom Controls, Default [105](#)

Custom Pages [18](#), [70](#)

- Auto Follow [70](#)

Cut Transition [30–32](#)

Cut Transitions [32](#)

D

Dashboard

- Switchboard [65](#)

DashBoard [18–20](#)

- Configuration [18](#)
- Custom Controls [19](#)
- Live Assist [18](#)
- MediaManager [19](#)
- Panel [20](#)
- PaneLINK [18](#)
- Personality [19](#)
- Status [18](#)
- ViewControl [19](#)

DashBoard Connections [103](#)

Date, System Time [85](#)

Default [105](#)

- Factory [105](#)

Default Bus Map [105](#)

Delete Media Item [52](#)

Delete Memory [49](#)

Deleting a Still [52](#)

Device Control [14](#)

Diagnostics [103–104](#)

- Copy Logs [103](#)

DIP Switches [104](#)

Dissolve Transitions [32](#)

DVE [42–43](#)

- Cropping [43](#)

- Key [42–43](#)

DVE Freeze [43](#)

DVE Transitions [34](#)

E

Edit Decision Lists [15](#)

EDL [93](#)

Eject Media Item [52](#)

Engine Type [103](#)

Ethernet [59](#)

Ethernet Interface Cards [100](#)

Exporting Sets [51](#)

Exporting Working Set [51](#)

External Reference [103](#)

F

Factory Default [105](#)

Fade to Black [90](#)

Field Dominance [103](#)
FlexiClean [24, 73](#)
Fly Key [42](#)
Follows, ME [74](#)
Format Conversion [81](#)
FPGA Temperature [103](#)
Frame Setup, Ethernet [59](#)
Frame Synchronizer [81](#)
Freeze [43](#)
FSFC [81](#)
FTP Connection [60](#)

G

Glow [88](#)
GPI [69, 90](#)
 Assign to Source [69](#)
 Setup [90](#)
GPIO/Tally Cards [100](#)
GPO Tally [91](#)

H

Help [19](#)

I

Input Cards [100–101](#)
Inputs
 Equalization [65](#)
Interface Card [101](#)

K

Key Preview [37–38, 43](#)
Key RATE [33](#)
Key Swap [27](#)
Keyer Transition Buttons, ViewControl [96](#)
Keying [37–38, 40, 42–45](#)
 Auto Select [37](#)
 Chroma Key [38](#)
 Chroma Key, Advanced [40](#)
 Chroma Key, Basic [38](#)
 DVE [42–43](#)
 Key Priority [37](#)
 Mask [44](#)
 Self Key [37](#)
 Split [38](#)
 Split Keys [45](#)
Keys [27](#)
 Copy [27](#)

L

Live Assist [18, 70](#)
 Custom Pages [18, 70](#)
 PaneLINK [18](#)
LiveEDL [15, 93–94](#)
 Capture [94](#)

LiveEDL (*continued*)
 Store [94](#)

M

Mask [44](#)
Matte [26](#)
ME [22](#)
 Source Selection [22](#)
ME Copying [27](#)
ME Follows [71, 74](#)
 Substitution Table [71](#)
Media Transitions [34](#)
Media-Store [52–54](#)
 Animations [52](#)
 Audio [52](#)
 Capture [54](#)
 Clear Channel [52](#)
 Delete Database Entry [52](#)
 Eject [52](#)
 File Specifications [53](#)
 Loading [53](#)
MediaManager [19](#)
 DashBoard [19](#)
Memories [46–49, 88](#)
 As Stored Attribute [47](#)
 Attributes [48](#)
 Bus Hold [46](#)
 Delete [49](#)
 No Recall Attribute [47](#)
 Recall Attribute [47](#)
 Recall Behavior [88](#)
 Recall Colors [47](#)
 Storing [46](#)
Memories, Default [105](#)
Memory Button [87](#)
MiniME [15, 22, 28, 79](#)
 Assignment [79](#)
 Source Selection [22](#)
 Transitions [28](#)
MiniME Chroma Key [42](#)
Mnemonic Source Names [67](#)
Mnemonics [68](#)
MultiPanel [99](#)
MultiScreen [71, 79](#)
 MiniME Assignment [79](#)
 Substitution Table [71](#)
MultiViewer [25, 76](#)
 Ancillary Source [76](#)
 Embedded Audio [76](#)
 Formats [76](#)
 Time-Clock [76](#)

N

Network Connection [59](#)
Network Ports [59, 108](#)
Next Trans Buttons [30–32](#)

O

On-Air Setting [74](#)
Output Cards [100–101](#)
Outputs [72](#)
 Data Rate [72](#)
 Re-Clocking [72](#)
 Video [72](#)

P

PanelBuilder [98](#)
PaneLINK [18](#)
Personality [19](#), [86](#), [88](#)
 DashBoard [19](#)
 MemME [88](#)
 Memory Recall Behavior [88](#)
 Router Mnemonics [88](#)
Ports, Network [108](#)
Power Supplies [101](#)
Pre-Tiled Sources [71](#)
Preview [25](#)
Preview, Transitions [30–32](#)

R

Rate, Transition [28](#)
Re-Entry [23](#)
Re-Entry Timing [23](#)
Real-Time Clock, System [85](#)
Rear Modules [100](#)
Redundant Power [101](#)
Reference [62–63](#)
 External [62](#)
 Internal [62](#)
 Video Switching Field [63](#)
Reference OK [103](#)
Reference Source [103](#)
Reset [105](#)
 Custom [105](#)
ROLL CLIP [30–32](#)
RossLinq [60](#)
RossTalk Port [103](#)
Router Mnemonics [88](#)
RState [105](#)
RState, Save [105](#)

S

Save Custom Reset [105](#)
Self Key [37](#)
Serial Number [103](#)
Sets [50](#)
 Exporting [51](#)
 Loading [50](#)
 Storing [50](#)
Show Alpha [44](#)
SoftPanel [20–21](#)
 Bus Area [21](#)
 Control Area [20](#)

SoftPanel (*continued*)
 Menu Area [20](#)
 User Area [20](#)
Software Version [103](#)
Source Names [67](#)
Sources [23](#)
 Layering [23](#)
 Re-Entry [23](#)
Specifications [108–109](#)
 GPI I/O [108](#)
 LTC [109](#)
 Serial Port [108](#)
 Tally [109](#)
Split Key [45](#)
Split Keys [38](#)
Status [103](#)
Storing Memories [46](#)
Substitution Table [71](#)
 MultiScreen [71](#)
Substitution Tables [71](#)
Switchboard [65](#)
Switcher Mode [64](#), [103](#)
Switcher Status [103](#)
Switcher/Crosspoint Cards [100](#)
Switching Field [63](#)
System Real-Time Clock [85](#)

T

Tallies [70](#), [91](#)
 GPO [91](#)
Temperature OK [103](#)
Time-Clock [76](#)
Timecode [93](#), [103](#)
Timing Windows, Re-Entry [23](#)
Trans Preview [30–32](#)
Transition Buttons, ViewControl [96](#)
Transitions [28](#), [30–34](#), [91](#)
 Auto Transition [30–32](#)
 Cut [30–32](#)
 Cuts [32](#)
 Direction [28](#)
 Dissolves [32](#)
 DVE [34](#)
 Flip Flop [28](#)
 from Panel [30–32](#)
 from Touchscreen Menu [28](#)
 GPO Trigger [91](#)
 Media [34](#)
 MiniME [28](#)
 Pause [28](#)
 Preview [30–32](#)
 Rate [28](#)
 Roll Clip [28](#)
 Trans Preview [28](#)
 Whiteflash [33](#)
 Wipes [33](#)
Transitions Limit [28](#)
Trigger GPO [91](#)
TSL UMD [67](#)
TSL UMD Port [103](#)

U

User Buttons [89](#)

V

Video Inputs [66–69](#)

Auto Key [68](#)

Cable EQ [65](#)

GPI Device Control [69](#)

Names [67](#)

Video Layering [23](#)

Video Mode [62](#), [103](#)

Setup [62](#)

Video Output [73](#), [76](#)

Ancillary Data [73](#)

Clean Feed [73](#)

MultiViewer [76](#)

Video Outputs [65](#), [72](#)

Data Rate [72](#)

Re-Clocking [72](#)

Video Source [22](#), [89](#)

Bus Map [89](#)

Video Sources [22](#)

External [22](#)

Follows [22](#)

Internal [22](#)

Selecting [22](#)

Selecting on DashBoard [22](#)

ViewControl [19](#), [96–97](#)

Bus Selection Buttons [96](#)

Button Setup [97](#)

Custom Control Buttons [96](#)

Keyer Transition Buttons [96](#)

Transition Buttons [96](#)

W

Whiteflash [33](#)

WhiteFlash [33](#)

Wipe Transitions [33](#)

Working Set [50–51](#)

Export [51](#)